

Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module User Manual

(Original Document)

12/2018



S1A33985.09

www.schneider-electric.com

Schneider
Electric™

The information provided in this documentation contains general descriptions and/or technical characteristics of the performance of the products contained herein. This documentation is not intended as a substitute for and is not to be used for determining suitability or reliability of these products for specific user applications. It is the duty of any such user or integrator to perform the appropriate and complete risk analysis, evaluation and testing of the products with respect to the relevant specific application or use thereof. Neither Schneider Electric nor any of its affiliates or subsidiaries shall be responsible or liable for misuse of the information contained herein. If you have any suggestions for improvements or amendments or have found errors in this publication, please notify us.

You agree not to reproduce, other than for your own personal, noncommercial use, all or part of this document on any medium whatsoever without permission of Schneider Electric, given in writing. You also agree not to establish any hypertext links to this document or its content. Schneider Electric does not grant any right or license for the personal and noncommercial use of the document or its content, except for a non-exclusive license to consult it on an "as is" basis, at your own risk. All other rights are reserved.

All pertinent state, regional, and local safety regulations must be observed when installing and using this product. For reasons of safety and to help ensure compliance with documented system data, only the manufacturer should perform repairs to components.

When devices are used for applications with technical safety requirements, the relevant instructions must be followed.

Failure to use Schneider Electric software or approved software with our hardware products may result in injury, harm, or improper operating results.

Failure to observe this information can result in injury or equipment damage.

© 2018 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents



| | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| | Safety Information | 9 |
| | About the Book | 13 |
| Chapter 1 | Installation | 15 |
| | Hardware Installation | 16 |
| | Module Specifications | 19 |
| | Communication Specifications | 21 |
| | Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software | 23 |
| | Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool | 25 |
| Chapter 2 | Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module | 27 |
| 2.1 | Ethernet Network Configuration Example | 28 |
| | The Ethernet Network Example | 28 |
| 2.2 | Creating a Project in Control Expert | 30 |
| | Creating a Project in Control Expert | 31 |
| | Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs | 36 |
| 2.3 | The Control Expert FDT/DTM Interface | 38 |
| | DTM Browser | 39 |
| | DTM Browser Menu Commands | 42 |
| | Field Bus Discovery Service | 48 |
| | Device Editor | 52 |
| | Configuring Properties in the Device Editor | 54 |
| | Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications | 56 |
| 2.4 | Channel Properties | 58 |
| | Channel Properties Page | 59 |
| | Channel Properties - Ethernet Page | 61 |
| | Channel Properties - TCP/IP Page | 62 |
| | Channel Properties - EtherNet/IP Page | 64 |
| 2.5 | Ethernet Services | 66 |
| | Enabling Services | 67 |
| | Configuring the DHCP and FDR Servers | 69 |
| | Configuring the SNMP Agent | 74 |
| | Configuring Access Control | 77 |
| | Configuring QoS Ethernet Packet Tagging | 80 |

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 2.6 | Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module as an EtherNet/IP Adapter | 82 |
| | Introducing the Local Slave | 83 |
| | Configuring a Local Slave | 85 |
| | Local Slave Inputs and Outputs | 90 |
| Chapter 3 | Adding Devices to an Ethernet Network | 97 |
| 3.1 | Hardware Catalog | 98 |
| | Adding a DTM to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 99 |
| | Add an EDS File to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 100 |
| | Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 103 |
| | Remove an EDS File from the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 105 |
| 3.2 | Adding an EtherNet/IP Device to the Network | 107 |
| | Setting Up Your Network | 108 |
| | Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device | 110 |
| | Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties | 112 |
| | Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections | 117 |
| | Connecting to the Advantys STB Island | 123 |
| | Configuring I/O Items | 127 |
| 3.3 | Adding a Modbus TCP Device to the Network | 140 |
| | Setting Up Your Network | 141 |
| | Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device | 143 |
| | Configuring STB NIP 2212 Properties | 145 |
| | Connecting to the Advantys STB Island | 152 |
| | Configuring I/O Items | 156 |
| Chapter 4 | Working With Derived Data Types | 165 |
| | Creating and Updating Derived Data Types | 166 |
| | Working with Derived Data Type Variables | 168 |
| | Effect of Activating and De-activating Devices on I/O %MW Memory Addresses | 177 |
| Chapter 5 | Optimizing Performance | 181 |
| 5.1 | Selecting a Switch | 182 |
| | Role of a Switch in an Ethernet Network | 183 |
| | Transmission Speed, Duplex and Auto-Negotiation | 184 |
| | Quality of Service (QoS) | 185 |
| | IGMP Snooping | 186 |
| | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | 187 |
| | Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) | 188 |
| | Port Mirroring | 190 |
| | Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Agent | 191 |

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 5.2 | Control Application Design | 192 |
| | Message Types | 193 |
| | Message Connection Types | 195 |
| | TCP and CIP Connections | 197 |
| | Message Priority | 198 |
| | Messaging Performance | 199 |
| | Message Frequency | 200 |
| | Allocating Network Bandwidth | 202 |
| | Estimating Message Traverse and Response Times | 204 |
| 5.3 | Projecting Ethernet Network Performance | 206 |
| | Network Load and Bandwidth Calculation Example | 206 |
| Chapter 6 | CIP Objects | 211 |
| | Identity Object | 213 |
| | Assembly Object | 215 |
| | Connection Manager Object | 217 |
| | Modbus Object | 220 |
| | Quality Of Service (QoS) Object | 222 |
| | TCP/IP Interface Object | 224 |
| | Ethernet Link Object | 226 |
| | EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics Object | 231 |
| | EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics Object | 234 |
| | IO Connection Diagnostics Object | 236 |
| | EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics Object | 240 |
| | EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List Object | 242 |
| Chapter 7 | Online Action | 245 |
| | Accessing CIP Objects | 246 |
| | Editing Port Configuration Properties for Remote EtherNet/IP Devices | 248 |
| | Pinging a Network Device | 250 |
| | Viewing and Editing Online Settings for a Remote Device | 252 |
| Chapter 8 | Explicit Messaging | 255 |
| 8.1 | Explicit Messaging Using the MBP_MSTR Block | 256 |
| | Configuring Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR | 256 |
| 8.2 | EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR | 258 |
| | EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Services | 259 |
| | Configuring the CONTROL and DATABUF Parameters | 261 |
| | MBP_MSTR Example: Get_Attributes_Single | 264 |
| | MBP_MSTR Example – Read Modbus Object | 269 |
| | MBP_MSTR Example – Write Modbus Object | 274 |

| | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 8.3 | Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR | 280 |
| | Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Function Codes | 281 |
| | Configuring the Control Parameter for Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging | 282 |
| 8.4 | Explicit Messaging via the Control Expert GUI | 289 |
| | Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices | 290 |
| | Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus TCP Devices | 293 |
| Chapter 9 | Diagnostics | 295 |
| 9.1 | Module Hardware Diagnostics | 296 |
| | LED Indicators for the Ethernet Communication Module | 296 |
| 9.2 | Control Expert Software Diagnostics | 298 |
| | Using the Diagnostic Window | 299 |
| | Ethernet Port Diagnostics | 301 |
| | Bandwidth Diagnostics | 304 |
| | Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics | 307 |
| | Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics | 311 |
| | Logging | 313 |
| Chapter 10 | Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module | 315 |
| | Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module | 315 |
| Chapter 11 | Embedded Web Pages | 317 |
| 11.1 | Accessing the Embedded Web Server | 318 |
| | Introducing the Embedded Web Pages | 319 |
| | Accessing the Home Page | 320 |
| | Using and Editing a Username and Passwords | 321 |
| 11.2 | Monitoring the Control Expert Application | 324 |
| | Using the Monitoring Page | 325 |
| | Data Editor (Standard) | 326 |
| | Working With Data Templates | 331 |
| | Data Editor (Lite) | 335 |
| 11.3 | Diagnostics | 336 |
| | Using the Diagnostics Page | 337 |
| | Status Summary | 338 |
| | Rack Viewer | 340 |
| | Processor Load | 341 |
| | Scanner Status | 344 |
| | Messaging | 346 |
| | Ethernet Statistics | 348 |
| | QoS Configuration | 350 |
| | Properties | 351 |

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Appendices | | 353 |
| Appendix A | Detected Error Codes | 355 |
| | TCP/IP Ethernet Detected Error Codes..... | 356 |
| | Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes..... | 357 |
| | EtherNet/IP Implicit or Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes..... | 358 |
| Appendix B | CIP General Status Codes | 361 |
| | CIP General Status Codes..... | 361 |
| Glossary | | 365 |
| Index | | 367 |

Safety Information



Important Information

NOTICE

Read these instructions carefully, and look at the equipment to become familiar with the device before trying to install, operate, service, or maintain it. The following special messages may appear throughout this documentation or on the equipment to warn of potential hazards or to call attention to information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.



The addition of this symbol to a “Danger” or “Warning” safety label indicates that an electrical hazard exists which will result in personal injury if the instructions are not followed.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **will result in** death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result** in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE is used to address practices not related to physical injury.

PLEASE NOTE

Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.

A qualified person is one who has skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of electrical equipment and its installation, and has received safety training to recognize and avoid the hazards involved.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Do not use this product on machinery lacking effective point-of-operation guarding. Lack of effective point-of-operation guarding on a machine can result in serious injury to the operator of that machine.

WARNING

UNGUARDED EQUIPMENT

- Do not use this software and related automation equipment on equipment which does not have point-of-operation protection.
- Do not reach into machinery during operation.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

This automation equipment and related software is used to control a variety of industrial processes. The type or model of automation equipment suitable for each application will vary depending on factors such as the control function required, degree of protection required, production methods, unusual conditions, government regulations, etc. In some applications, more than one processor may be required, as when backup redundancy is needed.

Only you, the user, machine builder or system integrator can be aware of all the conditions and factors present during setup, operation, and maintenance of the machine and, therefore, can determine the automation equipment and the related safeties and interlocks which can be properly used. When selecting automation and control equipment and related software for a particular application, you should refer to the applicable local and national standards and regulations. The National Safety Council's Accident Prevention Manual (nationally recognized in the United States of America) also provides much useful information.

In some applications, such as packaging machinery, additional operator protection such as point-of-operation guarding must be provided. This is necessary if the operator's hands and other parts of the body are free to enter the pinch points or other hazardous areas and serious injury can occur. Software products alone cannot protect an operator from injury. For this reason the software cannot be substituted for or take the place of point-of-operation protection.

Ensure that appropriate safeties and mechanical/electrical interlocks related to point-of-operation protection have been installed and are operational before placing the equipment into service. All interlocks and safeties related to point-of-operation protection must be coordinated with the related automation equipment and software programming.

NOTE: Coordination of safeties and mechanical/electrical interlocks for point-of-operation protection is outside the scope of the Function Block Library, System User Guide, or other implementation referenced in this documentation.

START-UP AND TEST

Before using electrical control and automation equipment for regular operation after installation, the system should be given a start-up test by qualified personnel to verify correct operation of the equipment. It is important that arrangements for such a check be made and that enough time is allowed to perform complete and satisfactory testing.

WARNING

EQUIPMENT OPERATION HAZARD

- Verify that all installation and set up procedures have been completed.
- Before operational tests are performed, remove all blocks or other temporary holding means used for shipment from all component devices.
- Remove tools, meters, and debris from equipment.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Follow all start-up tests recommended in the equipment documentation. Store all equipment documentation for future references.

Software testing must be done in both simulated and real environments.

Verify that the completed system is free from all short circuits and temporary grounds that are not installed according to local regulations (according to the National Electrical Code in the U.S.A, for instance). If high-potential voltage testing is necessary, follow recommendations in equipment documentation to prevent accidental equipment damage.

Before energizing equipment:

- Remove tools, meters, and debris from equipment.
- Close the equipment enclosure door.
- Remove all temporary grounds from incoming power lines.
- Perform all start-up tests recommended by the manufacturer.

OPERATION AND ADJUSTMENTS

The following precautions are from the NEMA Standards Publication ICS 7.1-1995 (English version prevails):

- Regardless of the care exercised in the design and manufacture of equipment or in the selection and ratings of components, there are hazards that can be encountered if such equipment is improperly operated.
- It is sometimes possible to misadjust the equipment and thus produce unsatisfactory or unsafe operation. Always use the manufacturer's instructions as a guide for functional adjustments. Personnel who have access to these adjustments should be familiar with the equipment manufacturer's instructions and the machinery used with the electrical equipment.
- Only those operational adjustments actually required by the operator should be accessible to the operator. Access to other controls should be restricted to prevent unauthorized changes in operating characteristics.

About the Book



At a Glance

Document Scope

This manual describes the use of the Quantum 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module. This manual describes the creation of a complete configuration. The features and functions of the module are explained in the course of constructing this configuration.

Use the specific configuration settings contained in this manual for instructional purposes only. The settings required for your specific configuration differ from the example presented in this manual.

Validity Note

This documentation is valid for EcoStruxure™ Control Expert 14.0 or later.

Related Documents

For additional information, refer to the online help files for the EcoStruxure™ Control Expert software, and to the following technical publications:

| Title of Documentation | Reference Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Advantys STB EtherNet/IP Network Interface Applications Guide | 31008204 |

You can download these technical publications and other technical information from our website at <https://www.schneider-electric.com/en/download>

Chapter 1

Installation

Overview

The Ethernet communication module serves as the interface between a Quantum PLC and other Ethernet network devices by means of either the EtherNet/IP or the Modbus TCP communication protocol. This chapter shows you how to install the module by:

- inserting it into a PLC backplane
- connecting it to an Ethernet network
- installing the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool software

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

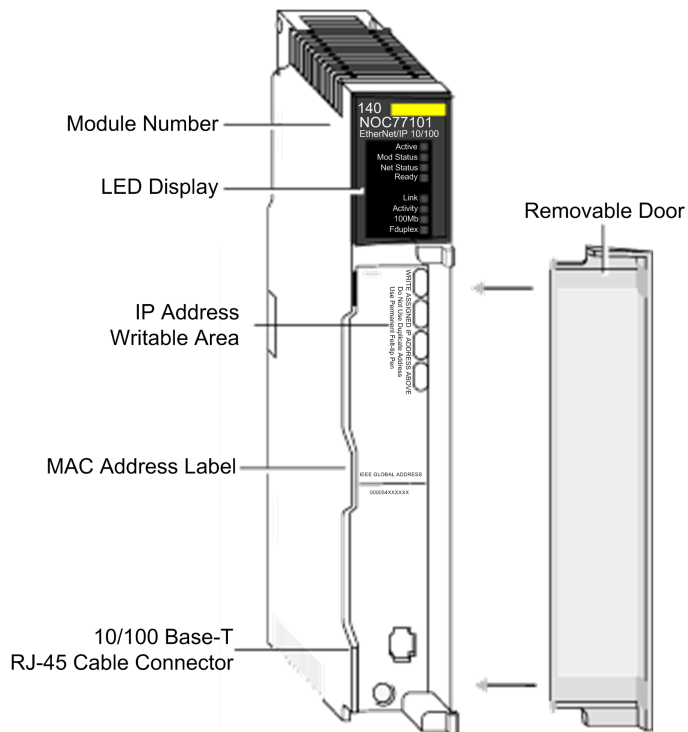
| Topic | Page |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Hardware Installation | 16 |
| Module Specifications | 19 |
| Communication Specifications | 21 |
| Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software | 23 |
| Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool | 25 |

Hardware Installation

Overview

The following information describes how to install the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module.

External Features



LEDs

The Ethernet communication module presents the following LED indicators:

- Active
- Module Status
- Network Status
- Ready
- Link
- Activity
- 100 Mb link
- Full Duplex

For a description of these LEDs, and how to use them to diagnose the module, refer to the topic LED Indicators for the Ethernet Communication Module (*see page 296*).

Locating a Backplane Slot

The Ethernet communication module operates on a Quantum PLC station. It can be installed in any available position in the PLC backplane.

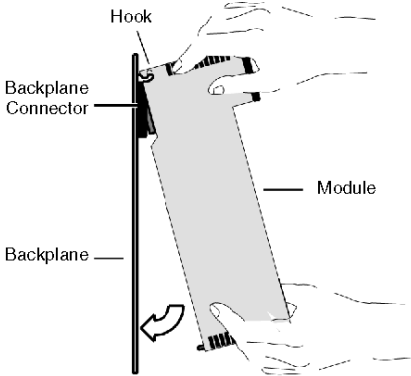
Selecting a Power Supply

When configuring the PLC station, add a power supply module that is capable of supplying power to modules on the rack.

Tools Required

One medium-sized (size 2) Phillips-head screw driver.

Mounting the Module in the Backplane

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Holding the module at an angle, mount it on the two hooks located near the top of the backplane.</p> <p>The following figure shows the correct way to hold the module.</p>  |
| 2 | Swing the module down so the connector engages the backplane connector. |
| 3 | Use a Phillips-head screw driver to tighten the screw at the bottom of the module from 2 through 4 in-lbs or from .22 through .45 Newton meters of torque. |

Wiring the Ethernet Connector

⚠ WARNING

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK OR BURN

Connect the ground wire to the protective ground (PE) terminal before you establish any further connections. When you remove connections, disconnect the ground wire last. Connect the Ethernet cable shield to PE ground at the Ethernet switch.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The Ethernet communication module communicates over an Ethernet network through a single RJ45 connector located at the bottom of the module.



Module Specifications

Specifications

140 NOC 771 01 specifications include:

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ports | |
| Communication Ports | One auto-sensing 10/100Base-T shielded twisted pair (RJ-45 connector) port. |
| Electrical | |
| Bus Current Required | @5V: 400 mA |
| Power Dissipation | 2 W |
| Fuse | None |
| Operating Conditions | |
| Temperature | 0...+60° C |
| Humidity | 0...95% Rh non-condensing @ 60°C |
| Altitude | 2000 m (6561.68 ft) |
| Storage Conditions | |
| Temperature | -40...+85°C |
| Humidity | 0...95% Rh non-condensing @ 60°C |
| Altitude | 3000 m (9842.52 ft) transport |

Software Compatibility

The Ethernet communication module is compatible with Unity Pro programming software version 5.0 and later.

Standards

The Ethernet communication module complies with the following standards:

- UL 508
- CSA 22.2-142
- CE
- EMI EN55011
- EN61131-2
- FM 3611 Class 1 Div2 Groups ABCD
- IEC61131-2
- IEEE 802.3 2002
- ODVA

Communication Modules per Rack

The maximum number of communication modules—including but not limited to 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication modules—you can install in a single rack is determined by the CPU serving that rack:

| CPU | Maximum Number of Communication Modules per Rack |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 140 CPU 311 10 | 2 |
| 140 CPU 434 12A | 6 |
| 140 CPU 534 14A | 6 |
| 140 CPU 651 50 | 6 |
| 140 CPU 651 60 | 6 |
| 140 CPU 652 60 | 6 |
| NOTE: The 140 NOC 771 01 cannot be placed in a Hot Standby rack. | |

Communication Specifications

Introduction

The following specifications describe both the I/O communication and the explicit messaging capacities of the 140 NOC 771 01.

I/O Communication Specifications

The Ethernet communication module presents the following I/O communication features:

| Communication type | Feature | Capacity |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EtherNet/IP (CIP Implicit Messaging) | Scanner | |
| | Maximum number of devices | 128 devices (125 devices as scanner + 3 devices as adapter) shared with Modbus TCP |
| | Maximum message size | 512 bytes |
| | Adapter | |
| | Maximum number of instances | 3 adapter instances |
| | Maximum number of connections | 2 connections per instance |
| | Maximum message size | 511 bytes including header |
| | Inputs | 505 bytes excluding header |
| | Outputs | 509 bytes excluding header |
| Modbus TCP (Modbus Scanner) | Maximum number of registers | |
| | Read | 125 registers |
| | Write | 120 registers |
| | Maximum number of devices | 128 devices shared with EtherNet/IP |
| | Maximum message size | |
| | Read | 250 bytes (125 words) excluding header |
| | Write | 240 bytes (120 words) excluding header |

Explicit Messaging Specifications

The Ethernet communication module presents the following explicit messaging features:

| Communication type | Feature | Capacity |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| EtherNet/IP (CIP Explicit Messaging) | Client | |
| | Maximum number of simultaneous connections | 16 connections |
| | Maximum number of concurrent requests | 16 requests, shared with Modbus TCP |
| | Server | |
| | Maximum number of simultaneous connections | 32 connections |
| | Maximum messaging size | 1023 bytes |
| Modbus TCP (Modbus Scanner) | Client | |
| | Maximum number of simultaneous connections | 16 connections |
| | Maximum number of concurrent requests | 16 requests, shared with EtherNet/IP |
| | Server | |
| | Maximum number of simultaneous requests | 128 requests |
| | Maximum number of simultaneous connections | 32 connections |
| | Maximum message size | |
| | Read | 250 bytes (125 words) excluding header |
| Write | 240 bytes (120 words) excluding header | |

Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software

Overview

Accessing Control Expert Configuration Tool Software depends on the software version you are using:

- Unity Pro version 6.0 and higher: The module configuration software is already included in the software installation.
- Unity Pro version 5.0: You need to install the Ethernet Configuration Tool software, which you can obtain from the following website:
<http://www.global-download.schneider-electric.com/8525773E00058BDC/all/DA00A87B8BB30386852577940058D66C>

NOTE:

Installing Ethernet Configuration Tool Software for Unity Pro Version 5.0

To install this software, navigate to the root of the installation files and run the file **Setup.exe**.

The setup process displays the following setup screens:

| Step | Screen | Description |
|------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Welcome | Click Next to continue. |
| 2 | ReadMe and Release Notes Display | Indicate whether to display the ReadMe file. Click Next to continue. |
| 3 | ReadMe | (Optional) Displays the ReadMe file, if selected above. Click Next to continue. |
| 4 | License Agreement | Displays the software license. Select I accept... , then click Next to continue. |
| 5 | Customer Information | Enter the following data: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • your first and last names • company name • identify for whom the software is installed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="radio"/> anyone who uses this computer <input type="radio"/> only for yourself Click Next to continue. |
| 6 | Destination Folder | Identify where the application will be installed. Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Accept the default path • Click Change... and specify a new path Click Next to continue. |
| 7 | Ready to Install | Click Next to continue. |
| 8 | Status | Progress bar indicates the status of the installation. When complete, click Next to continue. |
| 9 | Install Complete | Click Finish . |

The installation process described above copies the following objects to your PC:

- the Ethernet Configuration Tool
- a Generic EtherNet/IP DTM
- a Generic Modbus TCP DTM

NOTE: A DTM is a small software driver that defines and enables a device.

Updating Hardware Catalog

For installations of Unity Pro version 5.0 and higher, the next step is to update the **Hardware Catalog**. Updating the **Hardware Catalog** adds your new Ethernet communication module to the list of available modules and devices that you can add to your application.

Refer to the topic [Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog](#) (*see page 103*) for step-by-step instructions.

Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool

Introduction

Use the **Add or Remove Programs** utility provided by the Windows™ operating system to uninstall the Ethernet Configuration Tool.

To completely uninstall the Ethernet Configuration Tool, remove each of the following three DTMs, one at a time:



Generic EtherNet/IP DTM



Generic Modbus TCP DTM



Unity Pro Ethernet Configuration Tool

Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool DTMs

To remove the three Ethernet Configuration Tool DTMs:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Open the Windows Control Panel: Start → Settings → Control Panel . |
| 2 | In the Control Panel , double click on Add or Remove Programs . |
| 3 | In the Add or Remove Programs window, select the Change or Remove Programs page. |
| 4 | Select the first of the three DTMs to remove (for example, the Generic EtherNet/IP DTM), then click Remove . |
| 5 | Repeat step 4 for each of the remaining 2 DTMs: Generic Modbus DTM and Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool . |

Chapter 2

Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module

Overview

This chapter shows you how to use Control Expert programming software to select and configure the Ethernet communication module.

NOTE: The instructions presented in this chapter include specific choices made for a sample project. Your project may include different choices that are appropriate for your specific configuration.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

| Section | Topic | Page |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 2.1 | Ethernet Network Configuration Example | 28 |
| 2.2 | Creating a Project in Control Expert | 30 |
| 2.3 | The Control Expert FDT/DTM Interface | 38 |
| 2.4 | Channel Properties | 58 |
| 2.5 | Ethernet Services | 66 |
| 2.6 | Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module as an EtherNet/IP Adapter | 82 |

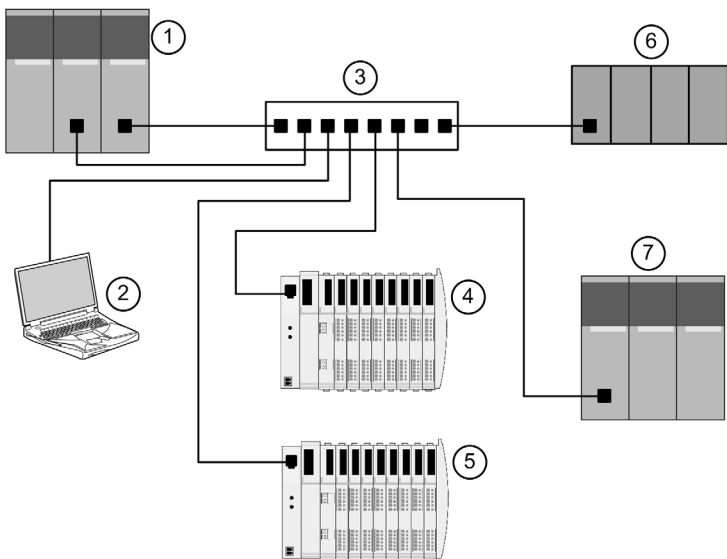
Section 2.1

Ethernet Network Configuration Example

The Ethernet Network Example

The Ethernet Network

This manual describes the creation of a complete Ethernet network configuration for the following topology:



- 1 Primary PLC incorporating the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module
- 2 PC equipped with both Control Expert configuration software (upgraded with the Ethernet Configuration Tool that ships with the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module), and Advantys configuration software, used to configure communication settings for Ethernet communication module in the PLC (1) and the remote network interface modules on the STB I/O islands (4 and 5, below)
- 3 Ethernet managed switch
- 4 Advantys STB island, with an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module plus 8 I/O modules
- 5 Advantys STB island, with an STB NIP 2212 Modbus TCP network interface module plus 8 I/O modules
- 6 Third-party PLC that scans a local slave in the primary PLC
- 7 A secondary PLC that "listens" to the scan of the primary PLC local slave by the third-party scanner

Multiple Roles of the PLC and Ethernet Communication Module

The PLC, and in particular the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module, can be configured to simultaneously perform multiple roles with respect to other network devices. In this sample network, you will learn how to configure the communication module to operate as:

- a scanner of devices that use the EtherNet/IP (4) and the Modbus TCP (5) protocols
- an adapter—also known as a local slave—that produces output data that both the remote third-party PLC (6) and secondary PLC (7) can read as input data
- a DHCP server that provides IP address settings to other devices on the Ethernet network
- an FDR server that provides operational settings to the devices on the Ethernet network that also receive their IP addresses from the DHCP server, above

Section 2.2

Creating a Project in Control Expert

Overview

This section shows you how to add modules—including the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module—to your project, using Control Expert.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Creating a Project in Control Expert | 31 |
| Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs | 36 |

Creating a Project in Control Expert

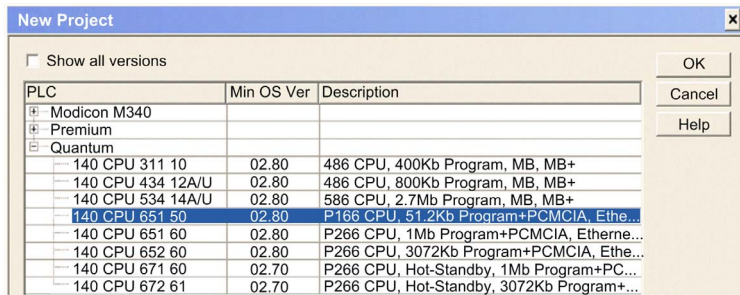
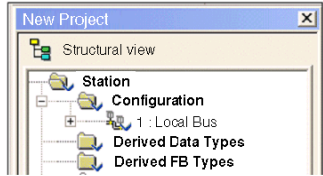
Introduction

This topic shows you how to create a new Control Expert project, and add to the new project the following components:

- a CPU
- a power supply
- a 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module

Creating and Saving a New Expert Project

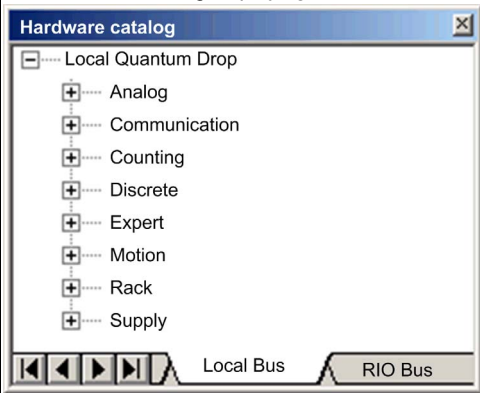
The following steps describe the creation of a project for the sample network:

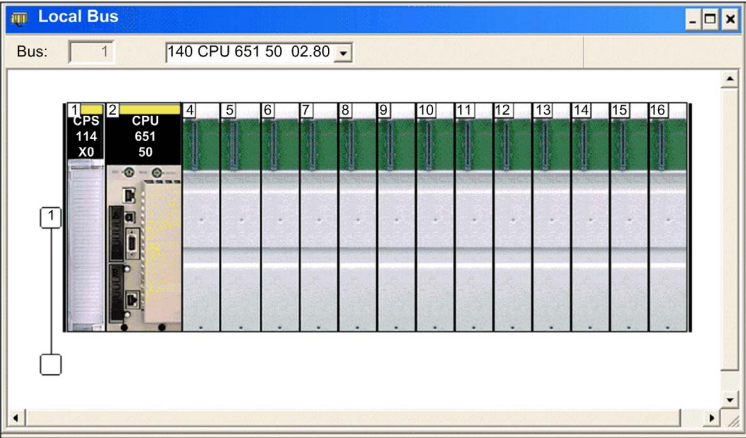
| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Open Control Expert. |
| 2 | In the Control Expert main menu, select File → New... The New Project window opens displaying a list of Schneider-Electric controller types. |
| 3 | In the New Project window, expand the Quantum node and select a CPU. In this example, select the 140 CPU 651 60 controller:  |
| 4 | Click OK . Control Expert displays the Project Browser , below.  |
| 5 | To save the project, select File → Save . The Save As dialog opens. |

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>In the Save As dialog, type in a File name—which will be the name of your Control Expert project—then click Save. Control Expert saves your project to the specified path location.</p> <p>NOTE: You can change the default location Control Expert uses to store project files. Before saving your project:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Select Tools → Options. The Options Management window opens. 2 In the left pane, navigate to Options → General → Paths. 3 In the right pane, type in a new path location for the Project path. You can also edit the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Import/Export file path ○ XVM path ○ Project settings templates path 4 Click OK close the window and save your path edits. |

Adding a Power Supply to the New Control Expert Project

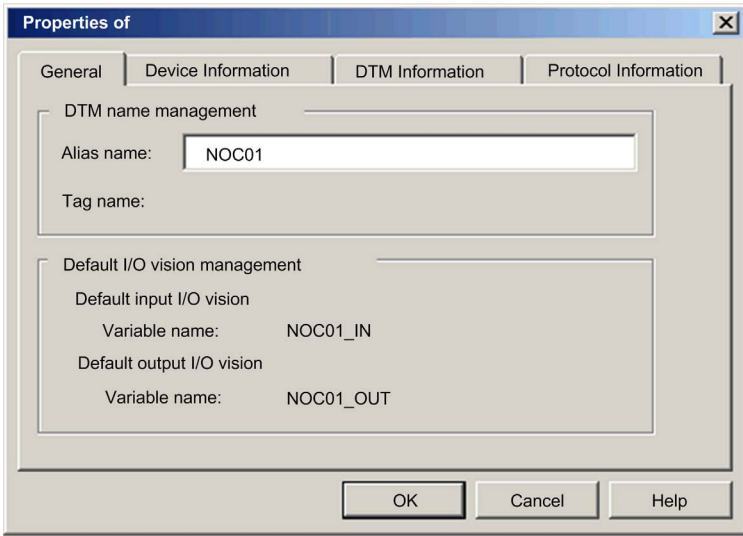
The next step is to add a power supply to your Control Expert project:

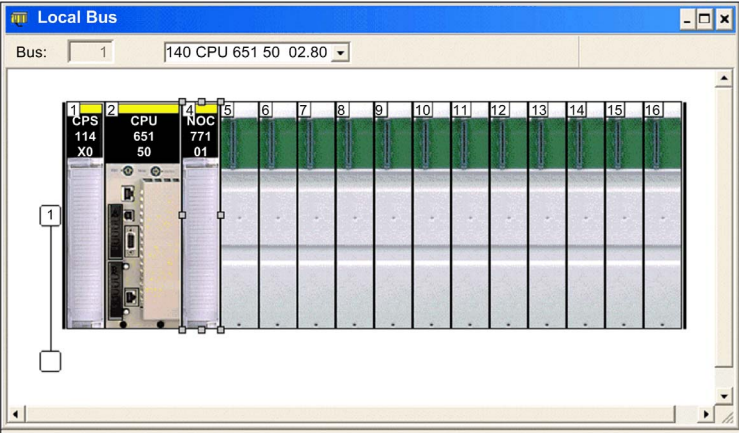
| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | <p>In the Project Browser, double click Local Bus. Control Expert displays both the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Local Bus window with the selected CPU in the second position, and ● Hardware catalog displaying the Local Bus tab, below:  <p>The screenshot shows a window titled "Hardware catalog" with a tree view. The tree view is expanded to show "Local Quantum Drop" with sub-items: Analog, Communication, Counting, Discrete, Expert, Motion, Rack, and Supply. At the bottom of the window, there are navigation arrows and two tabs: "Local Bus" (which is selected) and "RIO Bus".</p> |

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | <p>In the Hardware catalog, under the Supply node, use your mouse to select then drag a 140 CPS 114 X0 115/230 VAC power supply to a position in the rack—in this example, slot 1.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a software interface for configuring a rack. The window title is "Local Bus". Below the title bar, there is a "Bus:" label followed by a dropdown menu showing "1" and a text field containing "140 CPU 651 50 02.80". The main area displays a rack with 16 slots, numbered 1 through 16. Slot 1 is highlighted in yellow and contains a power supply unit labeled "CPS 114 X0". Slot 2 contains a CPU unit labeled "CPU 651 50". Slots 4 through 16 are empty. A small box with the number "1" is positioned to the left of slot 1, with a line connecting it to the unit. The rack is shown from a perspective view, with green PCBs visible in the slots.</p> |
| 9 | <p>In the File menu, select Save, to save your edits.</p> <p>NOTE: Schneider-Electric recommends that you periodically save your changes as you make edits.</p> |

Adding an Ethernet Communication Module to the New Control Expert Project

Next, add an Ethernet communication module to your project:

| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10 | <p>Returning to the Hardware catalog, under the Communication node, use your mouse to select then drag a 140 NOC 771 01 communication module to an open slot in the rack—in this example, slot 4.</p> <p>When you drop the communication module into the rack, Control Expert opens the communication module Properties window.</p> |
| 11 | <p>In the General page of the module properties window, type in an alias name for the communication module: NOC01:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;">  </div> <p>When you change the alias name, Control Expert changes the base input and output type and variable names to match the edited alias name.</p> <p>NOTE: Schneider Electric recommends that you assign a unique alias name to each communication module. This practice helps you distinguish between modules of the same type.</p> |
| 12 | <p>In the File menu, select Save, to save your edits.</p> |

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 13 | <p>Click OK to close the Properties window. The Local Bus now displays the three modules you have added:</p>  |
| 14 | <p>The next step is to configure the located memory space in the CPU for the communication module's inputs and outputs (<i>see page 36</i>).</p> |

Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs

Overview

Use the **Configuration** page of the Ethernet communication module's **Properties** window to configure:

- the size and starting position of inputs
- the size and starting position of outputs

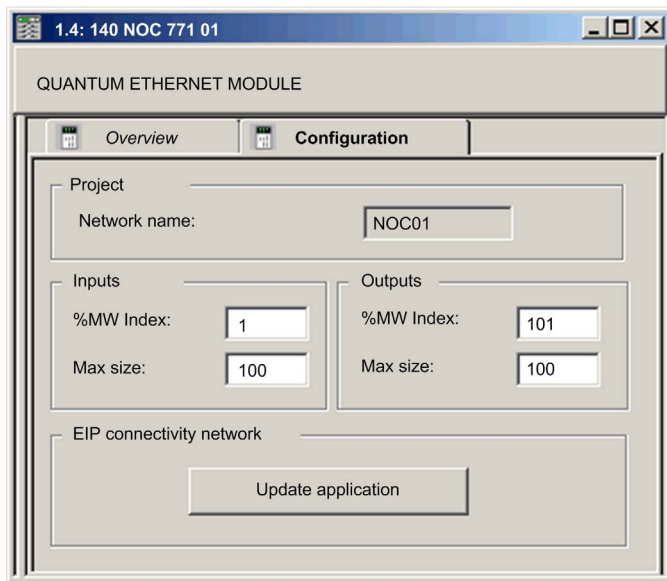
The following steps present one example of how to configure the size and location of inputs and outputs. Your own project configuration may differ.

Setting Input and Output Memory Addresses and Naming the Module

The **Properties** window opens when you double-click the left mouse button on the image of the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module in either the **Local Bus** window, or the **Project Browser**.

When you select the **Configuration** page, it displays the network—or Alias—name. This is the name assigned to the network channel when the communication module was added to the project.

Use the **Configuration** page to edit the communication module inputs and outputs, as follows:



To input the above settings, take the following steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the module's Properties window, select the Configuration page. |
| 2 | <p>Type in the size and starting position of the inputs and outputs, as follows:</p> <p>In the Inputs area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the %MW index field, type in a starting address for inputs—in this example: 1. ● In the Max size field, type in the maximum number of 16-bit words dedicated to inputs—in this example: 100. <p>In the Outputs area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the %MW index field, type in a starting address for outputs—in this example: 101. ● In the Max size field, type in the maximum number of 16-bit words dedicated to outputs—in this example: 100. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The inputs and outputs can be located at any available address. Allocate separate, non-overlapping space to inputs and outputs. ● Control Expert automatically reserves space for two arrays of 32 bytes, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ for connection health bits (<i>see page 171</i>), located at the beginning of the space configured for inputs ○ for connection control bits (<i>see page 175</i>), located at the beginning of the space configured for outputs ● Confirm that the %MW range you assign to both inputs and outputs is available in the CPU. For more information, refer to the Control Expert help file topic Processor Configuration Screen. |
| 3 | <p>In Control Expert select Edit → Validate (or click the Validate <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> button) to save the address and size settings for inputs and outputs.</p> <p>NOTE: After you validate module settings for the first time, the module name cannot be edited. If you subsequently decide to change the module name, delete the existing module from the configuration, then add and rename a replacement module.</p> |

Completing the Ethernet Network Configuration

After configuring settings for inputs and outputs, the next step is to configure the communication module settings—beginning with its **Channel Properties**—and then configure remote Ethernet network devices (*see page 97*).

NOTE: After you input configuration settings for the communication module and remote devices, return to the **Configuration** page of the Ethernet communication module's **Properties** window and click the **Update application** button. This creates derived data type (DDT) variables (*see page 166*) that display the following information and commands for your Control Expert project:

- connection health bits, that display the status of each connection
- connection control bits, you can use to toggle each connection on and off
- the value of input and output items
- module and device configuration settings
- free memory space that has been reserved, but not yet allocated

Section 2.3

The Control Expert FDT/DTM Interface

Overview

The section describes the use of DTMs within Control Expert.

What Is in This Section?

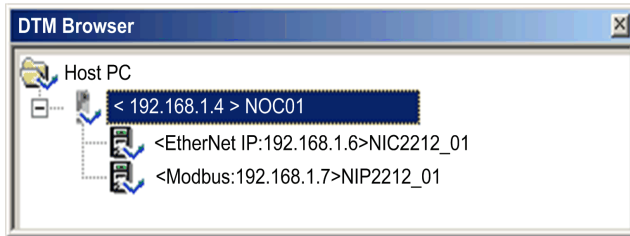
This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|
| DTM Browser | 39 |
| DTM Browser Menu Commands | 42 |
| Field Bus Discovery Service | 48 |
| Device Editor | 52 |
| Configuring Properties in the Device Editor | 54 |
| Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications | 56 |

DTM Browser

Overview

The **DTM Browser** displays a hierarchical list of DTMs—in the form of nodes on a connectivity tree—that have been added to your Control Expert project. Each DTM node represents an actual module or device in your Ethernet network.



Node Types

There are 3 types of DTM nodes:

- Communication DTMs:
 - Any COM DTM can be plugged directly under the root node (Host PC) at the 1st level
 - A COM DTM can support Gateway DTMs or Device DTMs as children if their protocols are compatible
- Gateway DTMs:
 - A Gateway DTM can support other Gateway DTMs or Device DTMs as children if their protocols are compatible.
- Device DTMs:
 - A Device DTM does not support any child DTMs

Node Names

Each DTM has a default name when inserted into the browser. The default name consists of the following elements:



<Channel: Address> Device Name

Where:

| Element | Description |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| channel | This is the name of the channel communication media, to which the device is plugged in. This name is read from the DTM and is set by the device vendor. Example: EtherNet/IP, Modbus |
| address | The bus address of the device, which can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The connection point on its parent gateway network • The slot number in the modular device parent internal bus Example: the device IP address |
| device name | The default name is determined by the vendor in the device DTM, but can be edited by the user. |

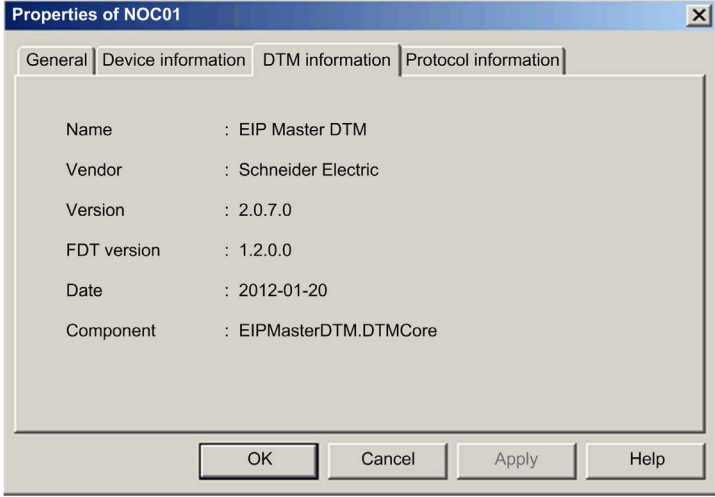
Node Status

The **DTM Browser** displays the status of each DTM node in the connectivity tree, as follows:.

| Status | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Built / Not-built | A blue check mark  superimposed on a device icon indicates that node, or one of its sub-nodes, is not built. This means that some property of the node has changed, and the information stored in the physical device is no longer consistent with the local project. |
| Connected / Disconnected | A connected DTM is denoted in bold text. An unconnected DTM appears in plain text. NOTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connecting a DTM to its physical device automatically connects higher level parent nodes up to the root node. • Disconnecting a DTM from its physical device automatically disconnects its lower level child nodes. NOTE: Connecting or disconnecting a DTM to or from its device does not also connect or disconnect Control Expert to or from the PLC. DTMs can be connected/disconnected while Control Expert is either offline or online. |
| Installed / Not-installed | A red  superimposed on a device icon indicates the DTM for that device is not installed on the PC. |

Handling Invalid Nodes

As indicated above, a red **X** superimposed on a node indicates the DTM for that node is not installed on the PC. To resolve this situation, click the right mouse button on the node to open a pop-up menu with the following two commands:

| Command | Description |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Delete | Removes the selected node (and its sub-nodes) from the DTM Browser . |
| Properties | <p>Opens the following dialog, which you can use to identify the name of the missing DTM:</p>  |

DTM Browser Menu Commands

Overview

The **DTM Browser** includes a pop-up, contextual (right-click) menu that displays commands for the currently selected DTM. The list of available commands consists of:

- universal commands, as determined by the selected node level:
 - host PC node (level 1)
 - communication module node (level 2)
 - remote device node (level 3)
- device-specific commands, as determined by the device DTM

Host PC Node Commands

The **Host PC** node contextual menu includes the following commands:

| Name | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Add ¹ | Opens the Add dialog — containing a subset of the Hardware Catalog , allowing the selection of a communication module DTM. |
| Check DTM devices ¹ | Checks the current project for invalid DTMs or DTMs that are not installed in the PC. If the results of the check include invalid or not-installed DTMs, they are displayed in the User errors tab in the information window and a red X is superimposed over their icons in the DTM Browser . |
| DTM services | Displays the communication DTMs selection, as well as the device topology, their respective IP addresses, and connection state. In this dialog, for each device you can connect, disconnect, load from devices, or store to devices. You can also choose to stop communication or continue activity when detected errors occur. |
| DTM hardware catalog | Displays the DTM catalog tab of the Hardware Catalog dialog. |
| Expand all ² | Displays every DTM in the project. |
| Collapse all ² | Displays only the communication DTMs in the project. |
| 1. This command also appears in the Control Expert Edit menu. 2. This command also appears in the Control Expert View menu. | |

Communication Module and Remote Device Node Commands

The **DTM Browser**'s contextual menu has the following items:

| Name | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Open ¹ | This opens the Device Editor for the selected communication module. NOTE: Double-clicking the left mouse button on the DTM in the DTM Browser also opens this window. |
| Add ¹ | This opens the Add dialog, displaying a subset of the Hardware Catalog , allowing the selection of a DTM. NOTE: Control Expert filters the content of the Add dialog, so that it displays only DTMs that are compatible with the selected DTM selected. |
| Delete ¹ | If the selected DTM allows this function, this deletes the selected DTM and its sub-node DTMs from the DTM connectivity tree. Deletion from the DTM connectivity tree does not affect the DTM's link to the I/O scanning table. |
| Field Bus Discovery | This scans the connected physical devices to create the corresponding field bus topology. Refer to the Field Bus Discovery Service topic. |
| Connect ¹ | This connects the DTM (<i>see page 46</i>) to its physical device on the network. This connection does not depend on the PLC online/offline status of the Control Expert project application. NOTE: Connecting a gateway or device DTM implicitly connects its parent DTM. |
| Disconnect ¹ | This disconnects the DTM (<i>see page 46</i>) from its physical device. This disconnection depends on the PLC online/offline status of the Control Expert project application. NOTE: Disconnecting a gateway or device DTM implicitly disconnects its parent DTM. |
| Load data from device ¹ | This loads data from the physical device on the network to the DTM. |
| Store data to device ¹ | This loads data from the DTM to the physical device on the network. |
| Copy | This command is disabled. |
| Paste | This command is disabled. |
| Device menu | This command opens a sub-menu that contains device-specific commands, as determined by the device vendor. For details, refer to the Communication Module Commands topic (<i>see page 44</i>). |
| 1. This command also appears in the Control Expert Edit menu. 2. This command also appears in the Control Expert View menu. | |

| Name | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device menu 2 | This command opens a sub-menu that contains device-specific commands, as determined by the device vendor. For details, refer to the Communication Module Commands topic (<i>see page 44</i>). |
| Properties ¹ | Opens the Ethernet communication module Properties window. |
| Print device ¹ | If this optional function is supported by a DTM, this function displays the device documentation — including configuration settings — in the PC's default Internet browser, which can then be printed. NOTE: Device information can be printed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • for only one device DTM at a time, when that DTM is not open for editing in the Device Editor. • only when the DTM is disconnected from the physical device. |
| Zoom out ² | This returns to the display of the entire DTM connectivity tree. |
| Expand all ² | This displays DTMs below the selected DTM. |
| Collapse all ² | This displays only the selected DTM. |
| 1. This command also appears in the Control Expert Edit menu. | |
| 2. This command also appears in the Control Expert View menu. | |

Communication Module Commands

When you select **Device menu** in the main contextual menu for the communication module, a sub-menu with the following commands is displayed:

| Name | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Offline Parameter | This command is disabled. |
| Online Parameter | This command is disabled. |
| Compare | This compares 2 devices, either online or offline. |
| Configuration | This opens the Device Editor for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are disconnected. |
| Observe | This command is disabled. |
| Diagnosis | This opens the Diagnosis Window for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are connected. |

| Name | | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Additional functions | Add EDS to library | Opens the EDS File Wizard , which you can use to add a device EDS file to the Control Expert EDS device library. Control Expert displays the contents of EDS files as DTMs for use in the DTM Browser and Device Editor . |
| | Remove EDS from library | Opens the EDS Deletion from Device Library window, which you can use to delete an EDS file from the device library. |
| | Online Action | Opens the Online Action window. Depending upon the protocol(s) a remote device supports, you can use the Online Action window to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping a remote EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device ● view and write to EtherNet/IP properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device ● view and write to port configuration properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device |
| | EtherNet/IP Explicit Message | Opens the EtherNet/IP Explicit Message (<i>see page 290</i>) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to EtherNet/IP remote devices. |
| | Modbus TCP Explicit Message | Opens the Modbus TCP Explicit Message (<i>see page 293</i>) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to Modbus TCP remote devices. |
| | About | |
| | Advanced Mode | Displays or hides expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections. See the Enabling Advanced Mode topic (<i>see page 47</i>) for instruction on how to use this feature. |

When you select **Device menu 2** in the main contextual menu for the communication module, a sub-menu with the following commands is displayed:

| Name | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration | This opens the Device Editor for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are disconnected. |
| Diagnosis | This opens the Diagnosis Window for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are connected. |
| Add EDS to library | Opens the EDS File Wizard , which you can use to add a device EDS file to the Control Expert EDS device library. Control Expert displays the contents of EDS files as DTMs for use in the DTM Browser and Device Editor . |
| Remove EDS from library | Opens the EDS Deletion from Device Library window, which you can use to delete an EDS file from the device library. |

| Name | Description |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Online Action | Opens the Online Action window. Depending upon the protocol(s) a remote device supports, you can use the Online Action window to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping a remote EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device ● view and write to EtherNet/IP properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device ● view and write to port configuration properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device |
| EtherNet/IP Explicit Message | Opens the EtherNet/IP Explicit Message (<i>see page 290</i>) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to EtherNet/IP remote devices. |
| Modbus TCP Explicit Message | Opens the Modbus TCP Explicit Message (<i>see page 293</i>) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to Modbus TCP remote devices. |
| Advanced Mode | Displays or hides expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections. See the Enabling Advanced Mode topic (<i>see page 47</i>) for instruction on how to use this feature. |

Connecting and Disconnecting a Device or Module DTM

A device or module DTM can be either connected to, or disconnected from, the physical device or module.

| When a device and its DTM are... | You can use the Ethernet configuration tool to... |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connected | Monitor and diagnose the real-time operation of the device or module |
| Disconnected | Configure a communication module or remote device by editing its properties |

NOTE: Distinguish between:


- connecting and disconnecting a DTM and the associated physical device using commands in the **DTM Browser**
— and —
- placing Control Expert in online or offline operating mode using commands in the Control Expert **PLC** menu

You can connect a DTM to, or disconnect a DTM from a device or module using the contextual pop-up menu in the **DTM Browser**. The **DTM Browser** indicates the relationship between the DTM and the remote module or device: a connected DTM is displayed in **bold** text; a disconnected DTM is displayed in normal text.

To connect a DTM to, or disconnect a DTM from its respective module or device, follow these steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser select the DTM that you want to connect to, or disconnect from, the physical communication module or remote device. NOTE: If the module or device name appears in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● bold text, it is connected and only the Disconnect command is enabled. ● normal text, it is disconnected and only the Connect command is enabled. |
| 2 | Click the right-mouse button. Result: A pop-up menu opens. |
| 3 | Select one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connect ● Disconnect NOTE: The Connect and Disconnect commands are also available in the Control Expert Edit menu. |

Enabling Advanced Mode

Use the contextual menu in the **DTM Browser** to toggle Control Expert in or out of **Advanced Mode**, thereby displaying or hiding expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections. These properties are identified by the  icon.

NOTE: To maintain system performance, confirm that **Advanced Mode** properties are configured only by persons with a solid understanding of communication protocols.

To toggle **Advanced Mode** on and off:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Close both the Diagnosis Window and every instance of the Device Editor before attempting to toggle Advanced Mode on or off. NOTE: If the Device Editor or the Diagnosis Window is open, the Advanced Mode status — on or off — cannot be changed. |
| 2 | In the DTM Browser , right-click the communication module. Result: A pop-up menu opens. |
| 3 | To toggle ON advanced mode, select Device Menu → Advanced Mode . |
| 4 | To toggle OFF advanced mode, repeat steps 1 through 3, above. |

Field Bus Discovery Service

Introduction

Use the field bus discovery service to detect and add to your Control Expert application, network devices that are situated on a local network. The field bus discovery service is available only when the Ethernet communication module DTM is connected to its physical device.

Only the first level devices below the communication DTM are detected.

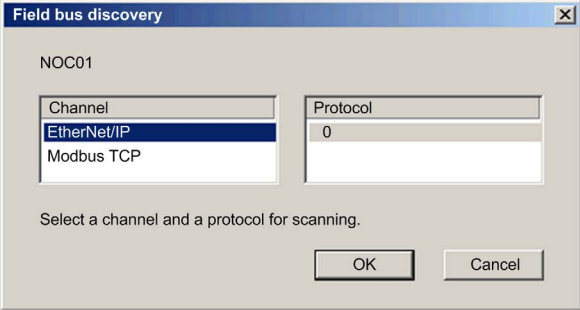
Performing Field Bus Discovery

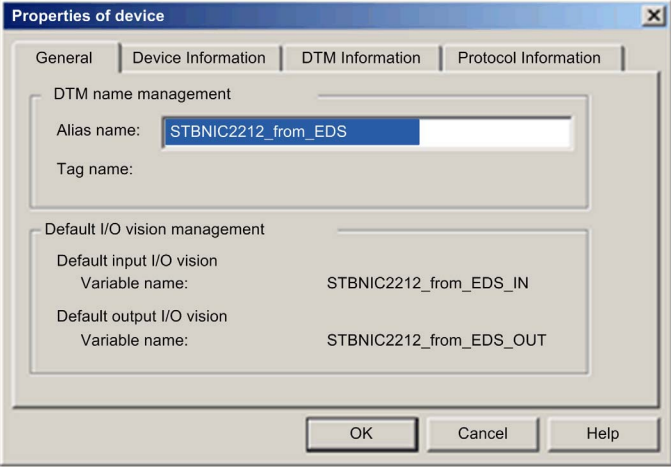
The results of the scanning process is compared to the registered DTMs in the DTM catalog of the computer. If a match is found in the DTM catalog for a scanned device, the results are accompanied with a matching type that gives the accuracy of the match.

These are the available matching types:

- *Exact match*: Every identification attribute matches. The correct device type was found.
- *Generic match*: At least the **Vendor** and device **Type ID** attributes match. The support level of the DTM is “Generic Support.”
- *Uncertain match*: At least the **Vendor** and device **Type ID** attributes match. The support level of the DTM is *not* “Generic Support.”

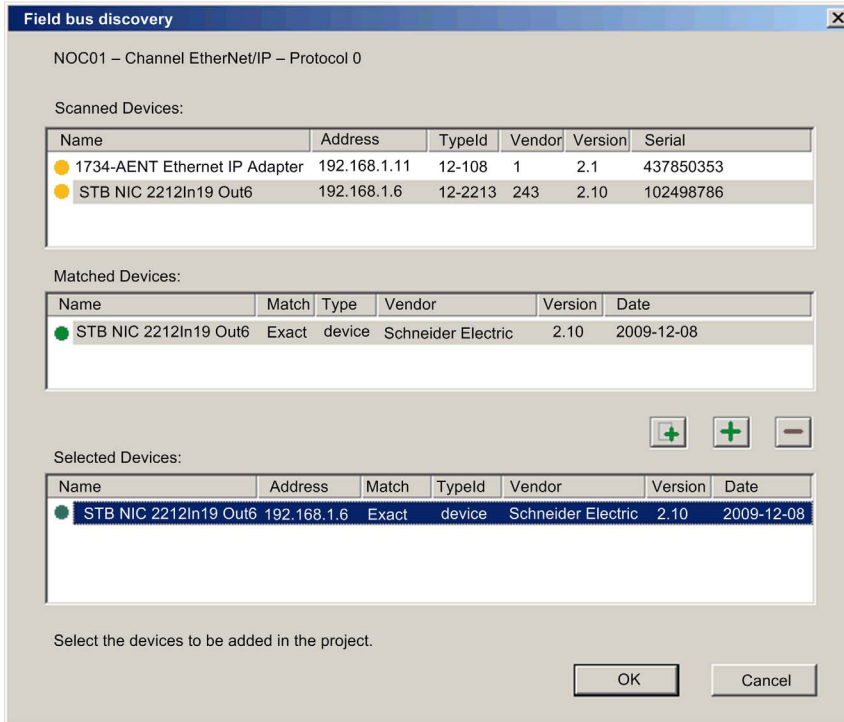
Use the field bus discovery service:

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select an appropriate DTM. NOTE: The field bus discovery service limits its search to the range of IP addresses that is pre-configured for the selected channel in the Channel Properties page (<i>see page 59</i>). |
| 2 | Right-click the DTM and scroll to Field bus discovery to open the dialog box:  |
| 3 | Under these conditions, select a channel and a protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The DTM has more than one channel. ● The channel supports more than one protocol. |
| 4 | Click on OK . The service starts to detect devices on the selected channel. |

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | If at least one matched device has been found, the Field Bus Discovery dialog displays a list of Scanned Devices . |
| 6 | Use the controls of the Field Bus Discovery dialog to select the devices to add to your Control Expert application. |
| 7 | After you have selected the devices you want to add in the Field Bus Discovery dialog, click OK . |
| 8 | If the field bus discovery process finds at least one device with an IP address that is already used in the project, you are asked if you want to continue and replace the existing project device(s): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Yes: Proceed to the next step. ● No: Cancel automatic field bus discovery. |
| 9 | <p>The device properties dialog (below) opens, displaying the default name for the first discovered device to be added:</p>  <p>In the General page of the device properties dialog, type in the Alias name for the device to be added, then click OK. The dialog closes, then re-opens if there is another device to be added to the application.</p> |
| 10 | Repeat the above step for each additional discovered device. |
| 11 | After you finish adding devices to the application, configure each device for operation as part of the application: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disconnect the Ethernet communication module from its DTM. In the DTM Browser, select the Ethernet communication module, then select Edit → Disconnect. ● Configure the new device properties in the DTMs for both the Ethernet communication module, and the newly added remote device. |

Field Bus Discovery Dialog

If at least one matched device has been found, the Field Bus Discovery dialog box is displayed listing the scanned and matched devices. Select the matched devices to be created in the Control Expert project (which then shows up in the **Selected Devices** list:






This dialog presents these lists:

| List | Description |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scanned Devices | The devices (matched and unmatched) found during the scan. |
| Matched Devices | The matched DTMs found in the workstation DTM catalog for the device that you selected in the Scanned Devices list. Each time a scanned device is selected in the Scanned Devices list, the contents of the Matched Devices list is updated to display the matched device DTMs found for the selected scanned device. The matching process can yield one or more matched devices for a given scanned device. In this case, only one DTM was discovered for the selected scanned device. |
| Selected Devices | This list displays the device DTMs that have been selected in the Matched Devices list, which will be added to the Control Expert project. |

The lists use the following colored icons:

| Color | Meaning |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Green | The device has been selected. |
| Yellow | The device has been matched. |
| Red | The device has not been matched. |
| Black | Information about the address of the scanned device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the Scanned Devices list, the device has an address identical to one of the DTMs in the Control Expert project ● In the Matched Devices list, the device will be assigned an address identical to one of the DTMs in the Control Expert project |
| <p>NOTE: An icon can consist of two colors. For example, a search can discover a device that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● has a matching DTM, and ● has an IP address identical to a device already added to the Control Expert application <p>In this case, the icon next to the discovered device would be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● half yellow and half black before it is selected, and ● half green and half black after it is selected | |

This dialog has five buttons:

| Button | Use this button to... |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Add All  | Automatically add the most closely matched (according to the matching types listed above) device DTM for each found device in the Matched Devices list to the Selected Devices list. |
| Add One  | Add the matched device DTM selected in the Matched Devices list. |
| Remove  | Remove one or more devices from the Selected Devices list. |
| OK | Insert the device DTMs in the Selected Devices list into the Control Expert project. If there are one or more devices in the Selected Devices list that have the same address in the Control Expert project, a message box opens asking if you want to continue. If you click OK , devices in the Control Expert project that have identical addresses as the selected devices are deleted and replaced by the DTMs selected in the Selected Devices list. |
| Cancel | Cancel the field bus discovery scan and do nothing. Information in the three lists is discarded. |

Device Editor

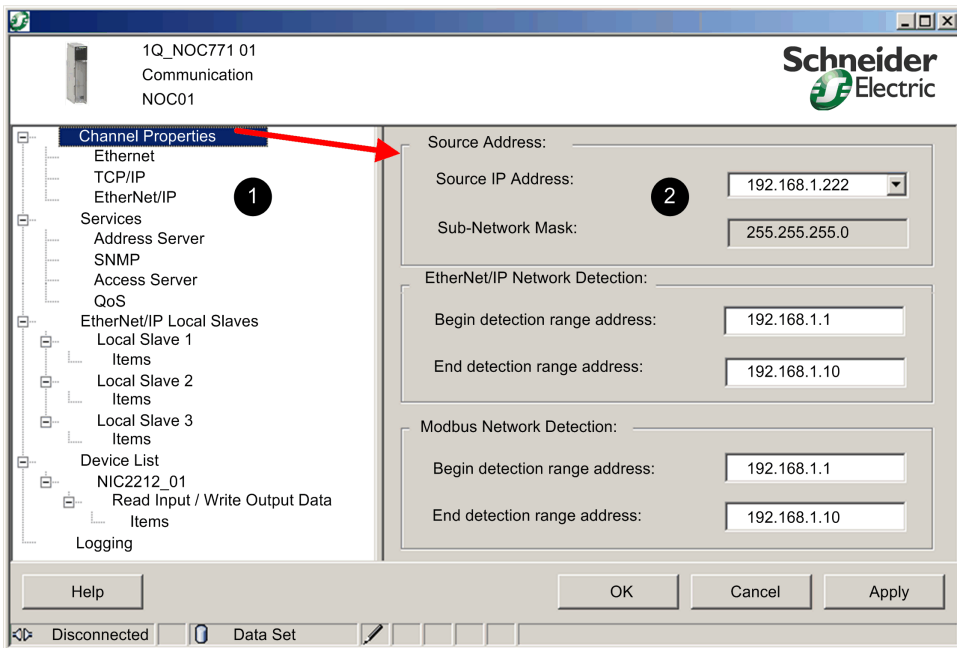
Description

Use the **Device Editor** to view and configure Ethernet communication modules and remote devices. The collection of properties you can view or configure depends on:

- the node type selected in the **DTM Browser**:
 - communication module
 - remote device
- whether Control Expert is operating in **Advanced Mode**




Displaying Properties of the Ethernet Communication Module

After you open the Ethernet communication module in the **DTM Browser**, the left pane (1, below) of the **Device Editor** displays a tree control containing configurable property groups for the communication module. Click on a node in the tree control to display one or more pages of module properties for the selected group in the right pane (2, below).



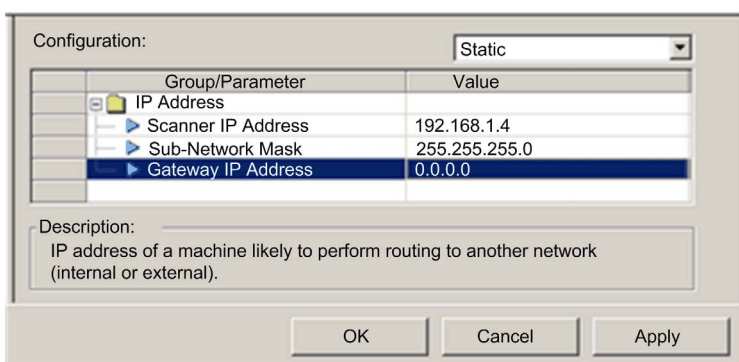
Property Types

The **Device Editor** displays an icon next to many device properties. The following three icons are displayed:

| This icon... | Indicates the property is... |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Read-only. The property value cannot be edited in this page. |
|  | Read-write. The property value can be edited in this page. |
|  | An expert-level communication protocol property that is displayed only when Advanced Mode is enabled. |

Displaying Property Definitions

Many property configuration pages provide an on-screen definition of the property you are editing. To display a property definition in the **Description** section of the page, select that property in the property list. The following screen displays a description of the **Gateway IP Address** property.



NOTE: The page displayed above can be accessed by opening an Ethernet communication module in the **Device Editor**, and then selecting **Channel Properties** → **TCP/IP** in the navigation tree.

Configuring Properties in the Device Editor



Configuring Properties

The **Device Editor** can be opened from the **DTM Browser**.

To open the **DTM Browser** select **Tools → DTM Browser** in the Control Expert main menu.

To use the **Device Editor**:

| Step | Description |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Confirm that the DTM you want to use is not connected to the actual communication module or device. If necessary, disconnect the DTM from the module or device (<i>see page 46</i>). |
| 2 | In the DTM Browser , select the Ethernet network node you want to configure, which can be either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● an Ethernet communication module — or — ● a remote device |
| 3 | With a node selected in the DTM Browser , do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the Control Expert main menu, select Edit → Open. — or — ● In the DTM Browser click the right mouse button and, in the pop-up menu, select Open. <p>The Device Editor appears. It displays the configurable properties for the selected module or device:</p> |

| Step | Description | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Expand the navigation tree and select a node in the left window pane to display its properties in the right pane. The list of configurable properties varies, depending on the node type — communication module or remote device — selected in the DTM Browser . | |
| 5 | While you edit a parameter, Control Expert displays an icon — next to the field you are editing and in the navigation tree — indicating the parameter value is being edited. Control Expert displays one of the following icons: | |
| | This icon... | Indicates the importance of the parameter being edited is... |
| |  | High: Editing this parameter may limit or deny access to the module or device. |
|  | Low: Editing this parameter will not limit or deny access to the module or device. | |
| 6 | <p>After you finish editing a page, click:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Apply to save your edits and keep the page open. — or — ● OK to save your edits and close the page. <p>NOTE: Your edits will not take effect until they are successfully downloaded from your PC to the CPU and from the CPU to the communication modules and network devices.</p> | |

Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications

Introduction

You can use Control Expert to download an application file from your PC to the PLC, and to upload an application file from the PLC to your PC.

To perform a successful upload, confirm that the application file includes specific upload-related information as part of the application.

Downloading DTM-Based Applications

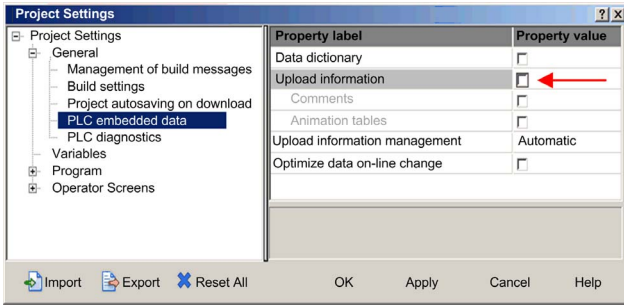
Control Expert applications that include DTM files require more memory than traditional Control Expert applications. The following products employ DTMs for network configuration:

- 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module for Quantum
- TSX ETC 101 Ethernet Communication Module for Premium
- BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet Communication Module for M340

In some cases, the configurations created for these modules—and the data associated with them—will require more memory than is available in the CPU.

If the amount of memory required by an application exceeds the amount of memory that is available in the CPU, Control Expert displays a message during the build process, before the application is downloaded to the PLC.

When this situation occurs, exclude the additional upload-related information from the application to complete the build and enable the application download. To do this, make the following configuration change in Control Expert:

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the main menu, select Tools → Project Settings... The Project Settings window opens. |
| 2 | In the left pane of the Project Settings window, select General → PLC embedded data . |
| 3 | In the right pane, de-select Upload information :  |
| 4 | Click OK to save your changes and close the Project Settings window. |

After the **Upload information** setting is disabled, you can build the application and download it to the PLC.

NOTE: An application in which the **Upload information** setting has been disabled cannot later be uploaded from the PLC to the PC.

Uploading DTM-Based Applications

DTM-based applications that were successfully downloaded to Control Expert—with the project's **Upload information** setting enabled—can later be uploaded from the PLC to the PC if the target PC has the following files installed on it:

- a version of Control Expert that is equal to or higher than the version used to create the application
- the master DTMs for the modules included in the configuration
NOTE: The Ethernet Configuration Tool installation CD contains the Master DTMs for the Ethernet communication modules, referenced above.
- the device DTMs for the DTM-based devices attached to the network (confirm that the DTMs are of the same or higher revision as each device DTM used in the configuration)
- the device EDS files for any EtherNet/IP device used in the configuration (confirm that the EDS files are of the same or higher revision as each device EDS file used in the configuration)

After the above components have been installed on the target PC, you can upload a DTM-based Control Expert application from a PLC.

NOTE: Confirm that each of the above DTM components is installed on the target PC *before* attempting the upload.

Section 2.4

Channel Properties

Overview

This section describes how to configure channel properties for the Ethernet network.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Channel Properties Page | 59 |
| Channel Properties - Ethernet Page | 61 |
| Channel Properties - TCP/IP Page | 62 |
| Channel Properties - EtherNet/IP Page | 64 |

Channel Properties Page

Description

Use the **Channel Properties** page to:

- select the IP address to use for:
 - connecting module or device DTMs to physical devices
 - sending explicit messages to Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP devices
- view your PC's IP address settings

The **Channel Properties** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Channel Properties". It is divided into three main sections, each with a title and a group box:

- Source Address:** Contains a "Source IP Address" dropdown menu set to "192.168.1.99" and a "Sub-Network Mask" text box containing "255.255.255.0".
- EtherNet/IP Network Detection:** Contains a "Begin detection range address" text box with "192.168.1.1" and an "End detection range address" text box with "192.168.1.254".
- Modbus Network Detection:** Contains a "Begin detection range address" text box with "192.168.1.1" and an "End detection range address" text box with "192.168.1.254".

At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

To display this page, select the **Channel Properties** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 54](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Properties

This page presents the following properties:

| Name | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Source Address area: | |
| Source IP Address (PC): | A list of IP addresses assigned to network interface cards installed on your PC. |
| Sub-Network Mask: | The subnet mask associated with the selected Source IP Address. |
| EtherNet/IP Network Detection area: | |
| Begin detection range address | The starting IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of EtherNet/IP devices. |
| End detection range address | The ending IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of EtherNet/IP devices. |
| Modbus TCP Network Detection area: | |
| Begin detection range address | The starting IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of Modbus TCP devices. |
| End detection range address | The ending IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of Modbus TCP devices. |

Managing Source IP Address for Multiple PCs

When you connect a PC to a DTM-based Control Expert application, Control Expert requires that you define the IP address of the PC connected to the PLC, which is referred to as the *source IP address (PC)*. Rather than having to perform a **Build** in Control Expert each time you connect a PC to the PLC, the source IP address (PC) is selected automatically when you import the Control Expert application. During application import, the DTM retrieves all available configured NIC addresses of a connected PC and matches the subnet mask of the master with the available NIC list.

- If a match between the subnet mask of the master and the NIC list exists, Control Expert automatically selects the matched IP address as the *source IP address (PC)* in the **Channel Properties** page.
- If multiple matches exist, Control Expert automatically selects the IP address nearest to the subnet mask.
- If no match exists, Control Expert automatically selects the IP address to the nearest available subnet mask.

Channel Properties - Ethernet Page

Description

Use the **Ethernet** page to:

- view and edit the **Connection Speed**, which includes both the:
 - transmission speed, and
 - duplex mode
- view the **Frame Format**

The **Ethernet** page looks like this:

To display this page, select the **Channel Properties → Ethernet** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 54](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Properties

This page presents the following properties:

| Name | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection Speed | <p>The transmission speed and duplex mode for the network. Values include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Auto 10/100 Mb (default) ● 100 Mb Half ● 100 Mb Full ● 10 Mb Half ● 10 Mb Full <p>NOTE: Schneider Electric recommends the default setting—Auto 10/100 Mb. This setting causes the connected devices to perform auto-negotiation and thereby determine the fastest common transmission rate and duplex mode.</p> |
| Frame Format | Ethernet II is the only available value (read-only). |

Channel Properties - TCP/IP Page

Description

Use the **TCP/IP** page to:

- select a **Configuration** mode, which specifies how the communication module obtains its IP addressing settings, and
- edit the IP addressing settings that will be used if the **Configuration** mode is set to **Static**

The **TCP/IP** page looks like this:

| Group/Parameter | Value |
|----------------------|---------------|
| IP Address | |
| ▶ Scanner IP Address | 192.168.1.4 |
| ▶ Sub-Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |
| ▶ Gateway IP Address | 0.0.0.0 |

Description:
IP address of a machine likely to perform routing to another network (internal or external).

To display this page, select the **Channel Properties** → **TCP/IP** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 54](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Selecting a Configuration Mode

Use the **Configuration** list to specify a configuration mode. The configuration mode setting determines how the communication module obtains its IP address at startup. Choices are:

| Configuration Mode | Description |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Static | The module uses the scanner IP address, gateway IP address, and sub-network mask configured in this page. |
| Flash Memory | The module uses the IP address configured via the TCP/IP object and stored flash memory. An IP address configured by this process survives both a warm and a cold re-start. |
| BOOTP | The module uses an IP address assigned by a BOOTP server. |

Setting the Module Addresses in Static Mode

Three IP address properties need to be configured for the Ethernet communication module in **Static** configuration mode:

| Property | Description |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scanner IP Address | The 32-bit identifier—consisting of both a network address and a host address—assigned to a device connected to a TCP/IP Internet network using the Internet Protocol (IP). |
| Sub-Network Mask | The 32-bit value used to hide (or mask) the network portion of the IP address and thereby reveal the host address of a device on a network using the IP protocol. |
| Gateway Address | The address of a device, if any, that serves as a gateway to the communication module. |

Default Address Configurations

The communication module uses a default address configuration when it is not configured or when a duplicate IP address is detected. The default address is based on the MAC address of the module and makes it possible for several Schneider Electric devices to use their default network configuration on the same network.

The module uses the following default address configurations:

- **Default IP Address**
This default address starts with 10.10 and uses the last two bytes of the MAC address. As an example, a device with the MAC address of 00:00:54:10:8A:05 has a default IP address of 10.10.138.5 (0x8A=138, 0x05=5).
- **Default Sub-Network Mask**
The default address is 255.0.0.0 (a class A mask).
- **Default Gateway Address**
The default gateway address is identical to the default IP address.

Duplicate Address Checking


Before going online, the module sends out at least four ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) messages with a proposed IP address:

- if an answer is returned:
 - another network device is already using the proposed IP address
 - the module will not use the proposed IP address, but will instead use the default IP address
- if an answer is not returned:
 - the module is assigned the proposed IP address (along with the associated network parameters.)

NOTE: When powering up an entire network, some switches may be slow to complete the power up process. This slow switch response can cause some ARP messages to be dropped. To help improve performance when powering up an entire network, confirm that the network switches complete their power up cycle before powering up the PLCs.

Channel Properties - EtherNet/IP Page

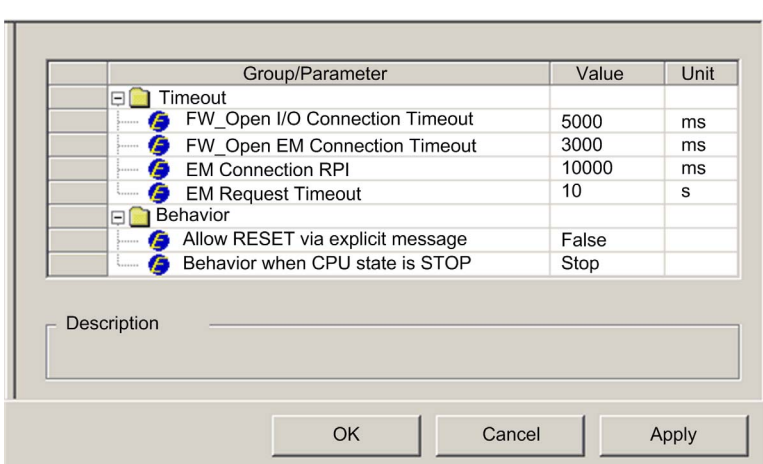
Description

The **EtherNet/IP** page is displayed only when Control Expert is operating in Advanced Mode (*see page 47*). Advanced mode properties are identified by the  icon.

Use the **EtherNet/IP** page to configure the following communication module properties:

- properties that determine how the communication module, as a scanner, opens connections for both implicit and explicit messages
- the frequency for transmitting produced data over implicit messaging connections
- the timeout period for explicit messaging connections
- the behavior of the communication module—as a scanner—when:
 - the application is stopped, or
 - the communication module receives a reset service request

The **EtherNet/IP** page looks like this:



To display this page, select the **Channel Properties → EtherNet/IP** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

NOTE: Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor (*see page 54*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Properties

Note: Users experienced in the configuration of EtherNet/IP networks can edit the following read-write properties.

| Name | Description |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Timeout | |
| FW_Open IO Connection Timing | The amount of time the communication module waits for the Forward_Open IO messaging transaction to open an implicit messaging connection. Default = 5000 ms |
| FW_Open EM Connection Timing | The amount of time the communication module waits for the Forward_Open IO messaging transaction to open an explicit messaging connection. Default = 3000 ms |
| EM Connected RPI | The value used to set the T->O (target to originator) and O->T (originator to target) requested packet interval (RPI) for explicit message connections. This value is used to calculate the lifetime of a connection. Default = 10000 ms. |
| EM Request Timeout | The amount of time the communication module waits between a request and reply of an explicit message. Default =10 s. |
| Output | |
| Allow reset explicit message | The behavior of the communication module—as scanner—when it receives a reset service request: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TRUE indicates the module will accept the request and reset itself. ● FALSE indicates the module ignores the reset service request and continues uninterrupted operations. Default = FALSE |
| Behavior when CPU state is STOP | The state of the communication module when the CPU application goes into a STOP state: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TRUE indicates that the module enters STOP state (implicit connections are closed). ● FALSE indicates that the module enters IDLE state (implicit connections are not closed). Default = FALSE |

Section 2.5

Ethernet Services

Overview

This section describes how to enable and configure Ethernet services provided by the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|-----------------------------------------|------|
| Enabling Services | 67 |
| Configuring the DHCP and FDR Servers | 69 |
| Configuring the SNMP Agent | 74 |
| Configuring Access Control | 77 |
| Configuring QoS Ethernet Packet Tagging | 80 |

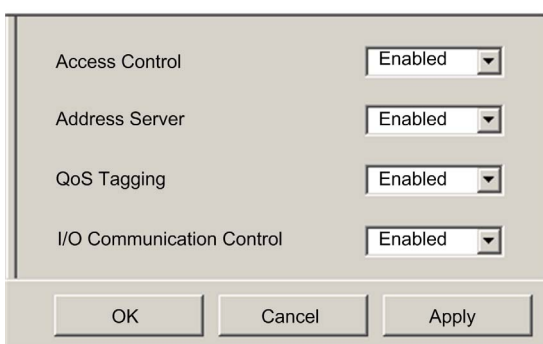
Enabling Services

Description

Use the **Services** page to enable and disable Ethernet services provided by the communications module.

NOTE: After you enable a service, you can configure its settings. Control Expert applies default settings to each service you enable, but elect not to configure.

The **Services** page looks like this:



The screenshot shows a dialog box with a light gray background. It contains four rows of settings, each with a label on the left and a dropdown menu on the right. The labels are 'Access Control', 'Address Server', 'QoS Tagging', and 'I/O Communication Control'. All four dropdown menus are currently set to 'Enabled'. At the bottom of the dialog box, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

| | |
|---------------------------|---------|
| Access Control | Enabled |
| Address Server | Enabled |
| QoS Tagging | Enabled |
| I/O Communication Control | Enabled |

Buttons: OK, Cancel, Apply

To display this page, select the **Services** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

When you **Enable** a service, Control Expert displays a node for that service in the navigation tree on the left side of the **Device Editor**, beneath the **Services** parent node. Click on a service node to access its settings.

When you **Disable** a service, Control Expert hides the node for that service.

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 54](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Properties

The Ethernet communication module can be configured to provide the following services:

| If this service is enabled... | The module can... |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SNMP | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● serve as an SNMP v1 agent ● provide trap information to up to two devices configured as SNMP managers. <p>NOTE: The SNMP service is enabled by default, and cannot be disabled.</p> |
| Access Control | deny access to the Ethernet communication module by unauthorized network devices. |
| Address Server | provide both IP addressing parameters and operating parameters to other Ethernet devices. |
| QoS Tagging | <p>add <i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> (DSCP) tags to Ethernet packets so that network switches can prioritize the transmission and forwarding of Ethernet packets.</p> <p>NOTE: Before enabling QoS tagging, confirm that devices connected to the Ethernet communication module support QoS tagging.</p> |
| I/O Communication Control | <p>allow the Control Expert application to control the enabling and disabling of individual connections between the communication module and remote I/O devices.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The application can open and close individual connections using the control bits located at the beginning of the output area. ● If this service is disabled, the user, via the application program, cannot toggle on and off connection control bits |

Configuring the DHCP and FDR Servers

Description

The Ethernet communication module includes both a DHCP and a Fast Device Replacement (FDR) server. The DHCP server provides IP address settings to networked Ethernet devices. The FDR server provides operating parameter settings to replacement Ethernet devices that are equipped with FDR client functionality.

Use the **Address Server** page to:

- enable and disable the communication module's FDR service
- view an automatically generated list of devices included in the communication module's Ethernet configuration, displaying for each device:
 - IP addressing parameters, and
 - whether the device's IP addressing parameters are provided by the communication module's embedded DHCP server
- manually add remote devices—that are not part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration—to the communication module's DHCP client list

NOTE: Confirm that each device you manually add is equipped with DHCP client software, and is configured to subscribe to the communication module's IP addressing service.

The **Address Server** page looks like this:

FDR Server:

Automatically Added Devices

| Device Number | IP Address | DHCP | Identifier Type | Identifier | Sub-Network Mask | Gateway IP Address |
|---------------|-------------|---------|-----------------|------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 003 | 192.168.1.6 | Enabled | Device Name | NIC2212_01 | 255.255.255.0 | 0.0.0.0 |
| | | | | | | |

Manually Added Devices

| IP Address | Identifier Type | Identifier | Sub-Network Mask | Gateway IP Address |
|--------------|-----------------|------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 192.169.0.23 | Device Name | NIC2212_24 | 255.255.255.0 | 192.169.0.0 |
| | | | | |

To display this page:

| Step | Description |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Select the Services node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the Device Editor . The Services page opens. |
| 2 | In the Services page, set the Address Server field to Enabled . The Address Server node appears in the navigation tree. |
| 3 | Select the Address Server node in the navigation tree. |

Enabling the FDR Service

To enable the communication module's FDR service, set the **FDR Server** field to **Enabled**. To disable the service, toggle the same field to **Disabled**.

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* (*see page 54*) for instructions on how to apply edited properties to networked devices.

Any networked Ethernet device equipped with FDR client functionality can subscribe to the communication module's FDR service. The communication module can store up to 1 MB of FDR client operating parameter files. When this file storage capacity is reached, the module cannot store any additional client FDR files.

The communication module can store FDR client files for up to 128 devices, depending on the size of each stored file. For example, if the size of each FDR client file is small—not more than 8 Kb—the module could store up to the maximum of 128 parameter files.

Manually Adding Remote Devices to the DHCP Service

Remote devices that are part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration—and which have subscribed to the communication module's IP addressing service—automatically appear in the **Automatically Added Devices** list.

Other remote devices—that are not part of the communication module's configuration—can be manually added to the communication module's DHCP IP addressing service.

To manually add networked Ethernet devices, which are not part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration, to the communication module's IP addressing service:

| Step | Description | |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Address Server page, click the Add Device Manually button. Control Expert adds an empty row to the list of Manually Added Devices . | |
| 2 | In the new row, configure the following parameters for the client device: | |
| | IP Address | Type in the IP address of the client device. |
| | Identifier Type | Select the type of value the client device will use to identify itself to the FDR server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MAC address ● Device Name |
| | Identifier | Depending upon the identifier type, type in the client device setting for the MAC address or Name. |
| | Mask | Type in the client device subnet mask. |
| | Gateway | Type in the gateway address that remote devices can use to communicate with devices located on other networks. Use 0.0.0.0 if remote devices will not communicate with devices located on other networks. |
| 3 | Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> (<i>see page 54</i>) for instructions on how to apply edited properties to networked devices. | |

Viewing the Auto-Generated DHCP Client List

The list of **Automatically Added Devices** includes a row for each remote device that is:

- part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration, and
- configured to subscribe to the communication module's DHCP addressing service

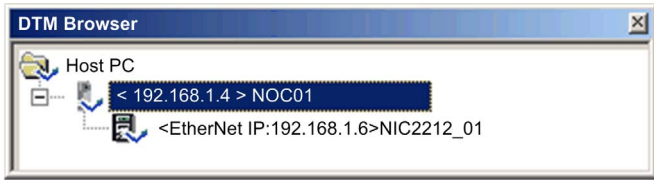
NOTE: You cannot add devices to this list in this page. Instead, use the configuration pages for the remote device to subscribe to this service.

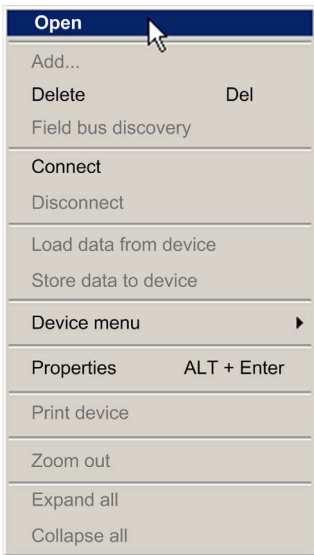
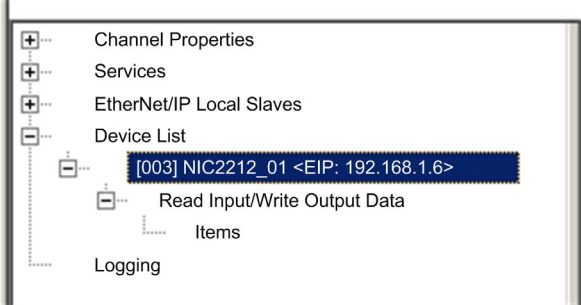
The list of **Automatically Added Devices** contains the following information for each networked device:

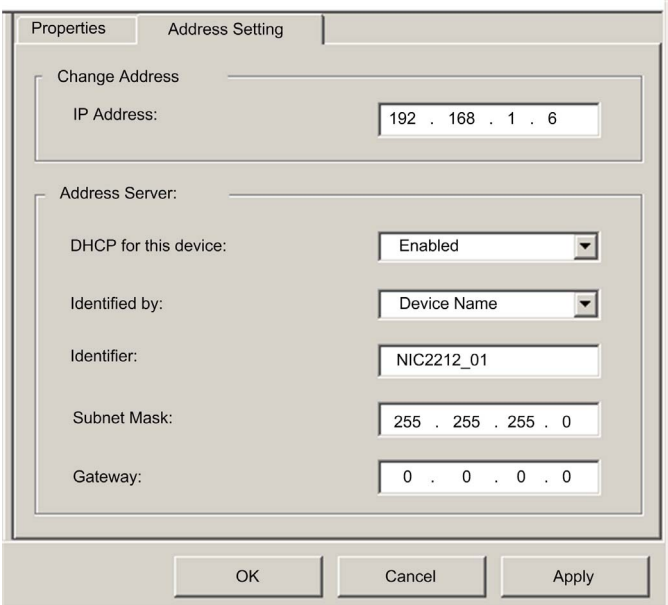
| Property | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device Number | The number assigned to the device in the Control Expert configuration. |
| IP Address | The client device IP address. |
| Enable DHCP | TRUE indicates that the device subscribes to the DHCP service. |
| Identifier Type | Indicates the mechanism used by the server to recognize the client (MAC address or DHCP device name). |
| Identifier | The actual MAC address or DHCP device name. |
| Mask | The client device subnet mask. |
| Gateway | The IP address a DHCP client device will use to access other devices that are not located on the local subnet. A value of 0.0.0.0 constrains the DHCP client device by allowing it to communicate only with devices on the local subnet. |

Subscribing to the DHCP Service for a Device that is Part of the Configuration

An Ethernet device—that is part of the communication module Ethernet configuration—can subscribe to the communication module's IP addressing service. To subscribe to this service, follow these steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>In the DTM Browser, select the Ethernet communication module that is connected to the remote device that you want to add to the DHCP service. In the following example, the communication module with the alias name of NOC01 is selected:</p>  <p>NOTE: The selected module is connected to the STB NIC 2212 network interface device bearing the alias name NIC2212_01, which is the module you want to add to the DHCP service.</p> |

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>With NOC01 selected in the DTM Browser, click the right mouse button, and select Open in the pop-up menu.:</p>  <p>The Device Editor opens.</p> |
| 3 | <p>In the navigation tree on the left side of the Device Editor, expand the Device List node and select the device for which you want to enable the DHCP service. In this example, select NIC2212_01:</p>  <p>Control Expert displays the properties for the selected remote device in the right pane of the window.</p> |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>In the right pane of the window, select the Address Setting tab to display the following page:</p>  | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | <p>In the Address Server area of this page, configure the following properties:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>DHCP for this device</td> <td>Select Enabled</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Identified by</td> <td>The choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MAC Address, or ● Device Name Select Device Name.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Identifier</td> <td>Control Expert has automatically added the device name NIC2212_01. For the purpose of this example, accept this default value.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Subnet Mask</td> <td>Control Expert has automatically applied the same subnet mask used for the Ethernet communication module. For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of 255.255.255.0.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gateway</td> <td>For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of 0.0.0.0.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | DHCP for this device | Select Enabled | Identified by | The choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MAC Address, or ● Device Name Select Device Name . | Identifier | Control Expert has automatically added the device name NIC2212_01 . For the purpose of this example, accept this default value. | Subnet Mask | Control Expert has automatically applied the same subnet mask used for the Ethernet communication module. For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of 255.255.255.0 . | Gateway | For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of 0.0.0.0 . |
| DHCP for this device | Select Enabled | | | | | | | | | | |
| Identified by | The choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MAC Address, or ● Device Name Select Device Name . | | | | | | | | | | |
| Identifier | Control Expert has automatically added the device name NIC2212_01 . For the purpose of this example, accept this default value. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Subnet Mask | Control Expert has automatically applied the same subnet mask used for the Ethernet communication module. For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of 255.255.255.0 . | | | | | | | | | | |
| Gateway | For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of 0.0.0.0 . | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | <p>Click OK to save your edits.</p> <p>NOTE: Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> (see page 54) for more information on editing and saving property settings in this window.</p> | | | | | | | | | | |

Configuring the SNMP Agent

Description

The Ethernet communication module includes an SNMP v1 agent. An SNMP agent is a software component running on the communication module that allows access to the module's diagnostic and management information via the SNMP service.

SNMP browsers, network management software, and other tools typically use SNMP to access this data. In addition, the SNMP agent can be configured with the IP address of up to two devices—typically PC's running network management software—to be the target of event driven trap messages. These trap messages inform the management device of events such as cold start, and detected authentication failures.

Use the **SNMP** page to configure the SNMP agent in the communication module. The SNMP agent can connect to and communicate with up to 2 SNMP managers as part of an SNMP service. The SNMP service includes:

- authentication checking, by the Ethernet communication module, of any SNMP manager that sends SNMP requests
- management of event, or trap, reporting by the module

The **SNMP** page looks like this:

| Group/Parameter | Value | Unit |
|--------------------------------------|---------|------|
| IP Address Managers | | |
| IP Address Manager 1 | 0.0.0.0 | |
| IP Address Manager 2 | 0.0.0.0 | |
| Agent | | |
| Location (SysLocation) | | |
| Contact (SysContact) | | |
| SNMP Manager | False | |
| Community Names | | |
| Set | public | |
| Get | public | |
| Trap | public | |
| Security | | |
| Enable "Authentication Failure" Trap | False | |

Description

OK Cancel Apply

To display this page:

| Step | Description |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Select the Services node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the Device Editor . The Services page opens. |
| 2 | In the Services page, set the SNMP field to Enabled , then click either OK or Apply . The SNMP node appears in the navigation tree. |
| 3 | Select the SNMP node in the navigation tree. |

NOTE: Refer to the topic [Configuring Properties in the Device Editor](#) (*see page 54*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Viewing and Configuring SNMP Properties

NOTE: The sysName SNMP parameter is neither editable nor visible in the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool software. By default, the sysName is set to the Ethernet communication module part number.

The following properties can be viewed and edited in the **SNMP** page:

| Property | Description |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IP Address Managers: | |
| IP Address Manager 1 | The IP address of the first SNMP manager to which the SNMP agent sends notices of traps. |
| IP Address Manager 2 | The IP address of the second SNMP manager to which the SNMP agent sends notices of traps. |
| Agent: | |
| Location | The device location (32 characters maximum) |
| Contact | Information describing the person to contact for device maintenance (32 characters maximum) |
| SNMP Manager | Select either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TRUE: the Location and Contact information are editable in this page ● FALSE: Location and Contact settings are not editable in this page |
| Community Names: | |
| Get | Password required by the SNMP agent before executing read commands from an SNMP manager. Default = public . |
| Set | Password required by the SNMP agent before executing write commands from an SNMP manager. Default = public |
| Trap | Password an SNMP manager requires from the SNMP agent before the manager will accept trap notices from the agent. Default = public |
| Security: | |
| Enable Authentication Failure Trap | TRUE causes the SNMP agent to send a trap notification message to the SNMP manager if an unauthorized manager sends a Get or Set command to the agent. Default = FALSE . |

Configuring Access Control

Description

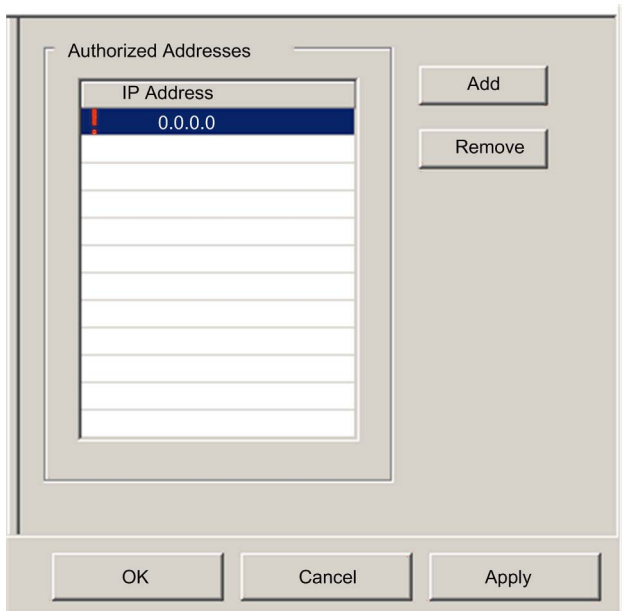
Use the **Access Control** page to restrict access to the Ethernet communication module in its role as either a Modbus TCP or EtherNet/IP server. When access control is enabled in the **Services** page, add the IP addresses of the following devices to the list of **Authorized Addresses** to permit communication with that device:

- the Ethernet communication module itself, so that the module can use EtherNet/IP explicit messaging for any of the following purposes:
 - obtaining diagnostic data
 - resetting the module
 - changing the IP address
- any client device that may send a request to the Ethernet communication module, in its role as either Modbus TCP or EtherNet/IP server
- your own maintenance PC, so that you can communicate with the PLC via Control Expert to configure and diagnose your application, and to view the module's web pages
- any target device to which the Ethernet communication module may send a Modbus TCP explicit message

NOTE: You need not add to list the IP address of devices that will be the target of EtherNet/IP explicit messages.

When access control is disabled in the **Services** page, the Ethernet communication module will accept Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP requests from any device.

The following graphic depicts the **Access Control** page immediately after a new row has been added to the list of **Authorized Addresses**, but before the new item has been configured:



To display this page:

| Step | Description |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Select the Services node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the Device Editor . The Services page opens. |
| 2 | In the Services page, set the Access Control field to Enabled and click either OK or Apply . The Access Control node appears in the navigation tree. |
| 3 | Select the Access Control node in the navigation tree. |

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 54](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Adding and Removing Devices in the Authorized Address List

To add a device to the **Authorized Addresses** list:

| Step | Description |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Access Control page, click Add . A new row appears in the Authorized Addresses list, displaying: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• a red exclamation point, indicating editing has begun, and• a placeholder IP address of 0.0.0.0 |
| 2 | Double-click the left mouse button on the placeholder IP address. The IP address field expands and becomes editable. |
| 3 | In the new IP address field, type in the IP address of the device which will be able to access the communication module, then press Enter . |
| 4 | Repeat steps 1 through 3, above, for each additional device to which you want to grant access to the communication module. |
| 5 | Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> (see page 54) for instructions on how to save your configuration edits. |

To remove a device from the **Authorized Addresses** list, select its IP address in the list, then click **Remove**. The selected IP address is removed.

Configuring QoS Ethernet Packet Tagging

Description

The Ethernet communication module can be configured to perform Ethernet packet tagging. The module supports the OSI layer 3 Quality of Service (QoS) standard defined in RFC-2475. When you enable QoS, the module adds a *differentiated services code point* (DSCP) tag to each Ethernet packet it transmits, thereby indicating the priority of that packet.

Use the **QoS** page to:

- specify the source of QoS packet priority settings, and
- view or edit the five QoS DSCP prioritization values

The **QoS** page looks like this:

To display this page:

| Step | Description |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Select the Services node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the Device Editor . The Services page opens. |
| 2 | In the Services page, set the QoS Tagging field to Enabled , then click OK or Apply . The QoS node appears in the navigation tree. |
| 3 | Select the QoS node in the navigation tree. |

NOTE: Refer to the topic [Configuring Properties in the Device Editor](#) (*see page 54*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Specifying the Source of QoS Settings

The five QoS prioritization values can be set either from the communication module's flash memory, or in this page. To specify the QoS configuration source, set the **Use value from** field to either:

| Setting | Description |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration ¹ | The communication module uses the settings input in the Type of Traffic section of this page. |
| Flash ¹ | The communication module uses the settings saved in the module's flash memory. The fields in the Type of Traffic section are read-only. |
| 1. Schneider Electric recommends that QoS values be set in the configuration, and not by saving settings to flash memory. Settings saved to flash memory will be lost if the module is replaced. | |

NOTE: You can also edit QoS configuration settings by using explicit messages to set the attributes of the QoS CIP object ([see page 222](#)).

Type of Traffic Settings

QoS tagging lets you prioritize Ethernet packet streams based on the type of traffic in that stream. The communication module recognizes the traffic types described below. When the **Use value from** field is set to **Configuration**, you can edit the prioritization values in this page. Each traffic type can have a prioritization value from 0... 63.

| Traffic Type | Default |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| DSCP Value for IO Data Urgent Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP) | 55 |
| DSCP Value for IO Data Scheduled Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP) | 47 |
| DSCP Value for IO Data High Priority Messages (Modbus TCP & EtherNet/IP) | 43 |
| DSCP Value for IO Data Low Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP) | 31 |
| DSCP Value for Explicit Message (Modbus TCP & EtherNet/IP) | 27 |

To effectively implement QoS settings in your Ethernet network:

- Use network switches that support QoS.
- Consistently apply DSCP values to network devices and switches that support DSCP.
- Confirm that switches apply a consistent set of rules for sorting DSCP tags, when transmitting and receiving Ethernet packets.

NOTE: The QoS settings for Scheduled, High, and Low priority messages also apply to input and output priority messages for a remote device. You can configure these settings for a remote device ([see page 119](#)) in the **Device Editor** by selecting a device connection node, then opening the connection's **General** page.

Section 2.6

Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module as an EtherNet/IP Adapter

Overview

This section describes how to configure the Ethernet communication module to act as an EtherNet/IP adapter, using a functionality called Local Slave. The communication module supports up to three instances of local slaves.

In its role as a EtherNet/IP adapter, the module initiates no messages. Instead, it responds to:

- implicit messaging requests from a scanner device in the network, and
- explicit messaging requests—directed to the communication module’s assembly object (*see page 215*)—from other devices on the network

NOTE: If no local slave instance is enabled, the communication module can respond to explicit messaging requests directed at its CIP objects (*see page 211*) other than the assembly object.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Introducing the Local Slave | 83 |
| Configuring a Local Slave | 85 |
| Local Slave Inputs and Outputs | 90 |

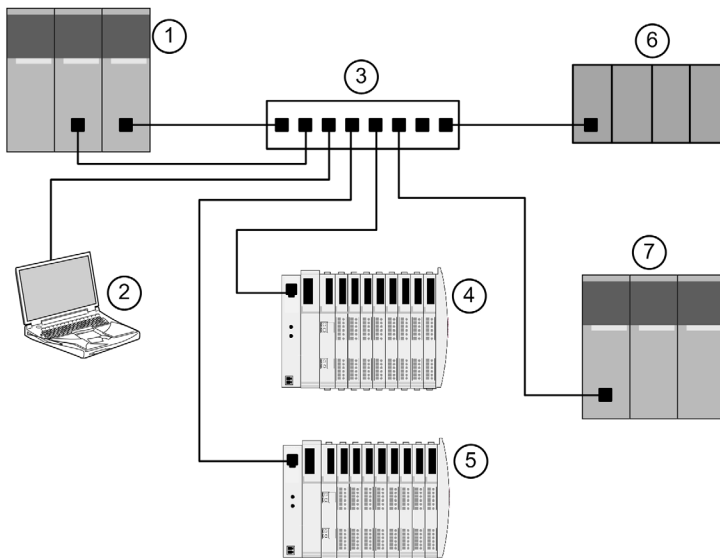
Introducing the Local Slave

Local Slave Networking Example

The Ethernet communication module supports up to three instances of the local slave functionality. The local slave functionality allows other scanners on the network to read from, and write to, the Ethernet communication module using implicit messaging. Each local slave instance can accept one exclusive owner connection and one listen only connection. Through a local slave, a remote scanner can access the communication module's CIP Assembly object (*see page 215*). The local slave function is especially beneficial for peer to peer data exchanges at a repetitive rate.

NOTE:

- The Ethernet communication module can provide three local slave adapter instances, while simultaneously performing as a scanner. These roles are not mutually exclusive.
- The local slave is exclusively an EtherNet/IP functionality.



The sample configuration, above, includes the following scanners and adapters:

- A primary PLC (1) with one local slave instance enabled. The PLC performs the following functions:
 - scans I/O data from remote devices (4 and 5)
 - scans input data from its own local slave instance
- A third party scanner (6)—which lacks adapter capability, and therefore cannot itself be scanned by the primary PLC (1)—performs the following functions:
 - collects data from other sources (not part of this network)
 - writes data to inputs of the primary PLC's local slave
 - scans the primary PLC's local slave's output data via an exclusive owner connection
- A secondary scanner (7), which also scans the primary PLC's local slave, for the very same output data scanned by the third party scanner, via a listen only connection

NOTE:

- Because the third party scanner (6) and the secondary scanner (8) both receive the same data produced by the local slave, the requested packet interval (RPI) settings of the third party scanner's exclusive owner connection are the same as those of the secondary scanner's listen only connection.
- By enabling a local slave on the primary PLC (1):
 - PLC (1) allows the third party PLC (6) to write to it at a repetitive rate, even if PLC (6) is not capable of acting as an adapter.
 - the secondary PLC (7) is able to scan the primary PLC (1) at a repetitive rate, rather than through application intensive explicit messaging.

The topics in this section show you how to use Control Expert software installed in the PC (2, above) to configure a local slave, and to create input and output items in support of the peer-to-peer data transfers between and among scanners.

Configuring a Local Slave

Description

The Ethernet communication module presents three identical **Local Slave** configuration pages. Use each page to configure a separate local slave instance. Create a local slave instance by:

- enabling and naming the local slave
- specifying the size of local slave input and output assemblies
- configuring local slave variable names

To display this page, select one of the three **Local Slave** nodes in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 54](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

The following steps describe a sample configuration for **Local Slave 1**. Your configuration may be different.

Configuration Example: Local Slave 1

In the sample network configuration ([see page 83](#)), the application in the third-party PLC produces data, which is available in the PLC Ethernet communication module as inputs. In this example, the third-party device produces the following information:

- production totals for manufacturing line A
- production totals for manufacturing line B
- the number of production interruption events for line A
- the number of production interruption events for line B

Any information that needs to be passed to the third-party device—for example, confirmation that data from the third-party device has been received by the PLC—is accessible in the third-party device as input data. In this example, the third-party device is programmed to scan Local Slave 1 for this confirmation.

When configuring inputs and outputs in both the local slave and the third-party PLC, associate inputs and outputs as follows:

| Associate these local slave items: | With these third-party PLC items: |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Outputs (T to O)—assembly instance 101 | Inputs—assembly instance 101 |
| Inputs (O to T)—assembly instance 102 | Outputs—assembly instance 102 |

The configured **Local Slave** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a configuration dialog box for a Local Slave. It is divided into three main sections: Properties, Assembly, and IO Structure Name. In the Properties section, the 'Number' is set to 000, 'Active Configuration' is set to Enabled, and 'Connection Bit' is 0. The Assembly section contains fields for 'Outputs (T to O): 101', 'Inputs (O to T): 102', and 'Configuration: 103', along with their respective sizes in Bytes and Words. The IO Structure Name section has an 'Input' and 'Output' sub-section, each with 'Structure Name' and 'Variable Name' fields. At the bottom, there are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

Enabling and Naming the Local Slave

Use the **Properties** section of the **Local Slave** page to enable (or disable) and identify the local slave.

| Setting | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number | <p>The unique number—or identifier—assigned to the device. By default, Control Expert assigns:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 000 = local slave 1 ● 001 = local slave 2 ● 002 = local slave 3 <p>In this example, accept the default 000.</p> |
| Active Configuration | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enabled activates the local slave. ● Disabled de-activates the local slave, but retains the current local slave settings. <p>In this example, select Enabled.</p> |

| Setting | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Comment | An optional free text comment field up to 80 characters maximum. In this example, leave blank. |
| Connection bit | Auto-generated integer (0...127) indicating the offset of the connection's: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● health bit, located in the module's input area ● control bit, located in the module's output area <p>Note: This setting is auto-generated after the local slave settings are input and the network configuration is saved.</p> |

Configuring the Size of Local Slave Input and Output Assemblies

Use the **Assemblies** section of the **Local Slave** page to configure the size of the local slave inputs and outputs. The assembly numbers are non-editable, and are assigned by Control Expert as follows:

| Assembly number | Local slave number | Used for connection |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 101 | 1 | T->O ¹ |
| 102 | 1 | O->T Exclusive Owner |
| 103 | 1 | Configuration |
| 199 | 1 | O->T Listen Only |
| 111 | 2 | T->O |
| 112 | 2 | O->T Exclusive Owner |
| 113 | 2 | Configuration |
| 200 | 2 | O->T Listen Only |
| 121 | 3 | T->O |
| 122 | 3 | O->T Exclusive Owner |
| 123 | 3 | Configuration |
| 201 | 3 | O->T Listen Only |
| <p>1. In this table:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● O indicates the originator—or scanner—device ● T indicates the target—or adapter—device | | |

The **Local Slave** assembly settings include:

| Setting | Description |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Outputs (T->O) | A read-only value (see table, above). In this example, 101 . |
| Outputs (T->O) Size | The maximum size—in bytes—reserved for local slave outputs. An integer from 1 to 509. In this example, only two output bytes are used: type in 2 . |
| Inputs (O->T) | A read-only value (see table, above). In this example, 102 . |
| Inputs (O->T) Size | The maximum size—in bytes—reserved for local slave inputs. An integer from 0 to 505. In this example, only eight input bytes are used: type in 8 . |
| Configuration | A read-only value (see table, above). In this example, 103 . |
| Configuration Size | A read-only value set to 0 . |

NOTE: When using explicit messaging to read the Ethernet communication module’s assembly object, you need to allocate sufficient room for the response, because the size of the response will equal the sum of:

the assembly size + Reply service (1 byte) + General Status (1 byte)

Configuring Local Slave I/O Variable Names

Each input and output that Control Expert creates for your application has both a non-editable structure name (used by Control Expert to internally identify input and output items) and an editable variable name.

Use the **I/O Structure Name** section of the **Local Slave** page to:

- view and edit local slave input and output variable names
- view non-editable local slave structure names

The following property settings have been made in this example:

| Setting | Description |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Input: | |
| Structure Name | The read-only name for input structures. By default, it is the concatenation of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the prefix T_ ● the alias device name—in this case NOC01 ● the device number—in this case 01 ● the suffix _IN <p>In this case, the default would be T_NOC01_01_IN.</p> |

| Setting | Description |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Variable Name | <p>The editable base name for input variables. By default, it is the concatenation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the alias device name—in this case NOC01 ● the device number—in this case 01 ● the suffix _IN <p>In this case, the default would be NOC01_01_IN. For this example, accept the default variable name.</p> |
| Output: | |
| Structure Name | <p>The read-only name for output structures. By default, it is the concatenation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the prefix T_ ● the alias device name—in this case NOC01 ● the device number—in this case 01 ● the suffix _OUT <p>In this case, the default would be T_NOC01_01_OUT.</p> |
| Variable Name | <p>The editable base name for output variables. By default, it is the concatenation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the alias device name—in this case NOC01 ● the device number—in this case 01 ● the suffix _OUT <p>In this case, the default would be NOC01_01_OUT. For this example, accept the default variable name.</p> |

If you have edited one or more variable names, you can restore the default variable names by clicking on the **Default Name** button.

Local Slave Inputs and Outputs

Introduction

The Ethernet communication module serves as an adapter when the **Active Configuration** field is set to **Enabled** in the configuration window for one (or more) of the module's local slave nodes.

When a local slave instance of an Ethernet communication module is enabled, the designated memory location allocated to that instance is exposed to, and can be accessed by, other devices.

The I/O data exchange, between the remote device and the local slave, is configured as part of the remote device's configuration settings.

Configuring the I/O Items

You can configure input and output items in groups of 1 or more single bits, 8-bit bytes, 16-bit words, 32-bit dwords, or 32-bit IEEE floating values. The number of items you create depends upon the data type and size of each item.

The process for creating and defining I/O items for the local slave is the same as for any adapter class device, and depends upon the type of items you wish to create.

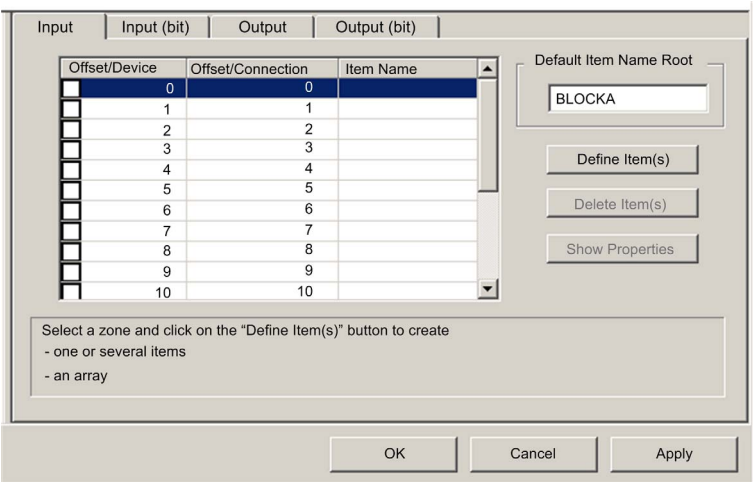
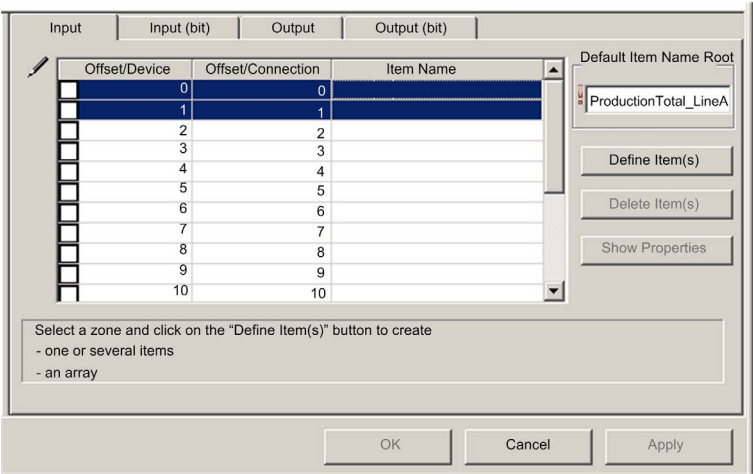
In support of the ongoing configuration example, the following items are required:

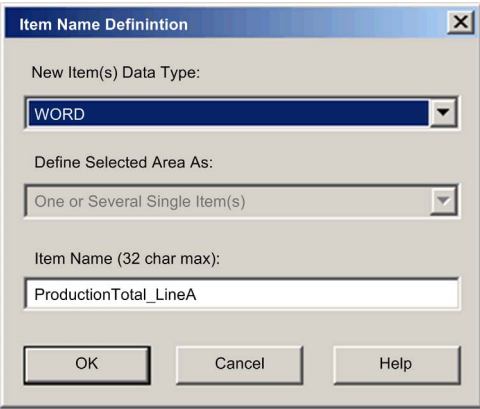
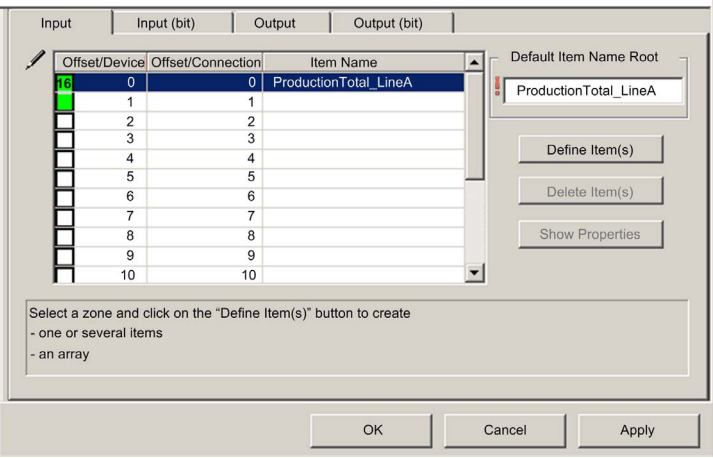
- 4 input word items
- 1 output word item

NOTE: The items created, below, are designed to hold data received from, or sent to, the third-party scanner. In addition to these items, it is necessary to include logic in the application programs in which the Ethernet communication module and the third-party scanner, respectively, are included. Writing this code is beyond the scope of this example.

Creating Input Word Items

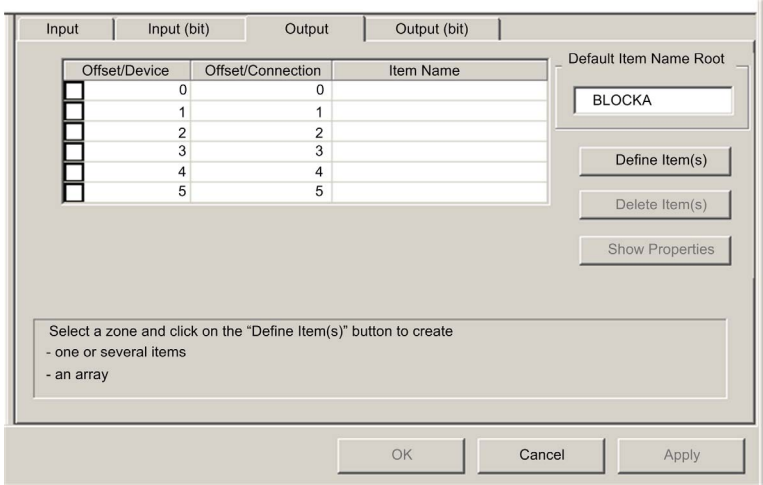
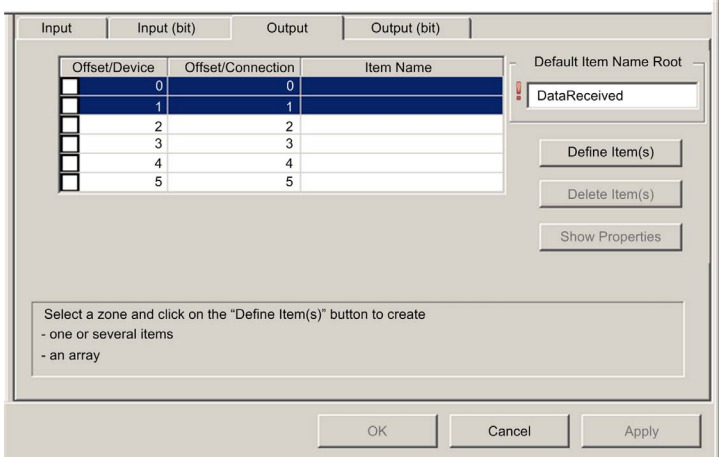
To create input items for local slave 01:

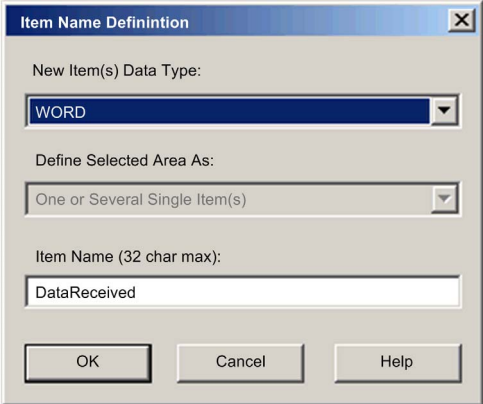
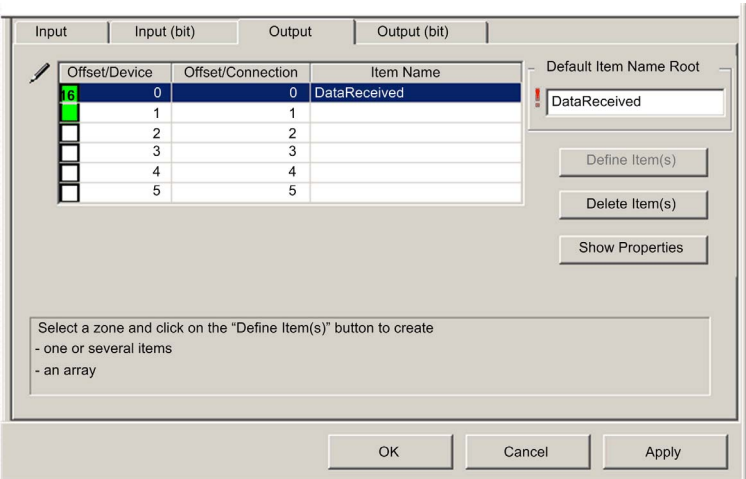
| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Select the Input tab to open that page:</p>  <p>NOTE: In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the items you create will be a 16-bit words, each item consists of 2 rows.</p> |
| 2 | <p>In the Default Item Name Root input box type: ProductionTotal_LineA.</p> |
| 3 | <p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first two rows: 0 and 1:</p>  |

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. Result: The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  |
| 5 | <p>Select WORD as the New Item(s) Data Type, then click OK. Result: A new item is created:</p>  |
| 6 | <p>Click Apply to save the new items, and leave the page open.</p> |
| 7 | <p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each new word item you need to create. In this example, that includes the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rows 2-3, Default Items Name Root: ProductionTotal_LineB ● Rows 4-5: Default Items Name Root: Events_LineA ● Rows 6-7: Default Items Name Root: Events_LineB |
| 8 | <p>Create output words.</p> |

Creating Output Word Items

To create output items for local slave 01:

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Click the Output tab to open the following page:</p>  <p>NOTE: In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the only item you will create is a 16-bit word, you will select 2 rows.</p> |
| 2 | <p>In the Default Item Name Root input box type: DataReceived.</p> |
| 3 | <p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first 2 rows, 0 and 1:</p>  |

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. Result: The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  |
| 5 | <p>Select WORD as the New Item(s) Data Type, then click OK. Result: A new item is created:</p>  |
| 6 | Click OK to close the Items window. |
| 7 | Select File → Save to save your edits. |

Using Local Slave Inputs and Outputs

The inputs and outputs created, above, are used as follows:

- The third-party device updates values of the following variables:
 - ProductionTotal_LineA
 - ProductionTotal_LineB
 - Events_LineA
 - Events_LineB
- The Ethernet communication module updates value of the DataReceived variable in the third-party device at the configured RPI.

Chapter 3

Adding Devices to an Ethernet Network

Overview

This chapter presents examples of how to add devices to, and how to configure these device for operations on, your Ethernet network.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

| Section | Topic | Page |
|---------|---------------------------------------------|------|
| 3.1 | Hardware Catalog | 98 |
| 3.2 | Adding an EtherNet/IP Device to the Network | 107 |
| 3.3 | Adding a Modbus TCP Device to the Network | 140 |

Section 3.1

Hardware Catalog

Overview

Control Expert includes a collection of modules and devices—called the **Hardware Catalog**—that you can add to a Control Expert project. EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP devices are located in the hardware catalog’s **DTM Catalog** page. Each device in the catalog is represented by a DTM that defines the parameters of the module or device.

Not every device on the market today offer device-specific DTMs. Some devices are instead defined by a device-specific EDS file. Control Expert displays each EDS file in the form of a DTM. In this way, you can use Control Expert to configure these Ethernet/IP devices—defined by an EDS file—in the same way you would configure a DTM-defined device.

Other devices lack both a DTM and an EDS file. You can configure these devices by using a Generic DTM that is included in the **DTM Catalog** page.

This section address the topics:

- how to add a DTM to the catalog
- how to add an EDS file to the catalog
- how to update the catalog
- how to remove an EDS file from the catalog

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Adding a DTM to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 99 |
| Add an EDS File to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 100 |
| Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 103 |
| Remove an EDS File from the Control Expert Hardware Catalog | 105 |

Adding a DTM to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

A Manufacturer Defined Process

Before you can add a DTM to the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog**, install it on the host PC—the same PC that is running Control Expert—by means of an installation process defined by the device manufacturer.

Consult your device documentation, provided by the device manufacturer, for information describing how to install a device DTM on your PC.

For instructions on how to install the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module, refer to the topic Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software ([see page 23](#)).

NOTE: After you successfully install a device DTM on your PC, update the Control Expert Hardware Catalog ([see page 103](#)) so the new DTM is visible in the catalog and available to be added to a Control Expert project.

Add an EDS File to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

Overview

Control Expert includes a wizard you can use to add one or more EDS files to the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog**. The wizard presents a series of instruction screens that:

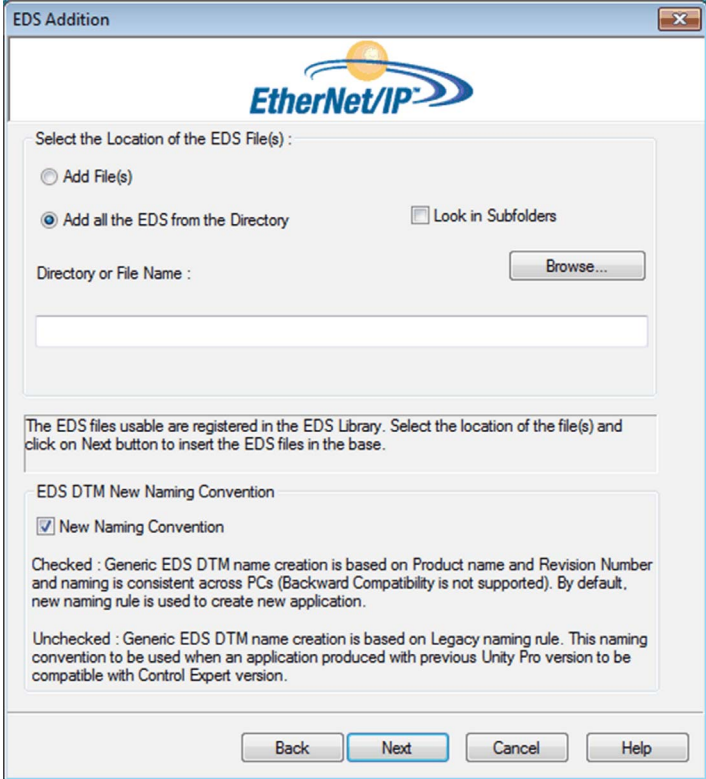
- simplify the process of adding EDS files to the catalog, and
- provide a redundancy check in case you attempt to add duplicate EDS files to the catalog




NOTE: The Control Expert **Hardware Catalog** displays a partial collection of DTMs and EDS files registered with the ODVA. This library includes DTMs and EDS files for products not manufactured or sold by Schneider Electric. The non-Schneider Electric EDS files are identified by vendor in the catalog. Please contact the identified device’s manufacturer for inquiries regarding the corresponding non-Schneider Electric EDS files.

Adding EDS Files

To add one or more EDS files to the library:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If the DTM Browser is not already open, in the Control Expert main menu select Tools → DTM Browser . |
| 2 | In the DTM Browser , select a communication module, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 3 | In the pop-up menu, select Device menu → Add EDS to library . The introductory page of the wizard opens. |

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Click Next. Page 2 of the wizard opens:</p>  |
| 5 | <p>In the Select the Location of the EDS File(s) section, select either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Add File(s), to add one or more EDS files you will individually select, or ● Add all the EDS from the Directory, to add all files from a folder you will select. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Select Look in Subfolders to also add EDS files in subfolders beneath the folder you selected. |
| 6 | <p>Click the Browse button. The Open dialog opens.</p> |
| 7 | <p>Use the Open dialog to navigate to and select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● one or more EDS files, or ● a folder containing EDS files |
| 8 | <p>After you have made your selections, click Open. The dialog closes and your selection appears in the Directory or File Name field.</p> |

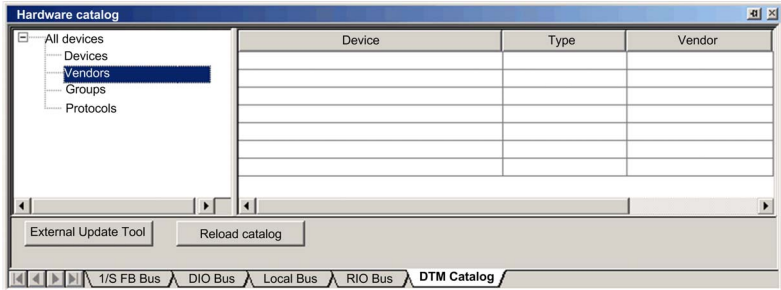
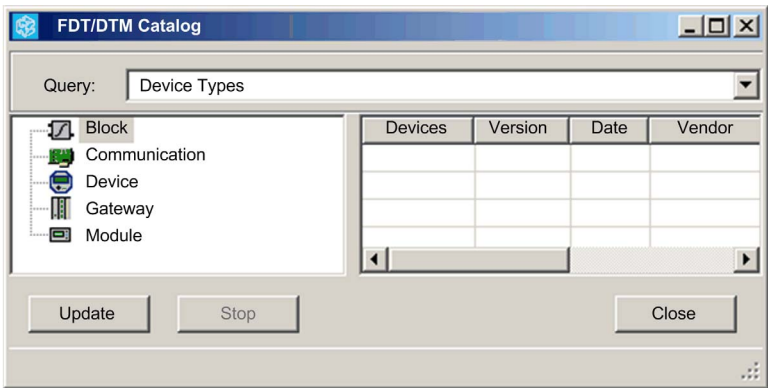
| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9 | <p>Choose the naming convention rule for the EDS DTM name creation.</p> <p>The new naming convention is based on Model Name / Product Name and Revision. A random character is automatically suffixed when Model Name / Product Name and Revision of an EDS file of the library are identical. The new naming convention is irrespective of the order in which EDS files are added to device library.</p> <p>By default, the New Naming Convention check box is selected and the new naming rule applies.</p> <p>NOTE: To keep backward compatibility with Control Expert versions, unchecked the New Naming Convention check box and the naming rule is based on Model Name / Product Name.</p> |
| 10 | <p>Click Next.</p> <p>The wizard compares the selected EDS files against existing files in the library.</p> |
| 11 | <p>(Conditional) If one or more selected EDS files is a duplicate, a File Already Exists message opens. Close the message.</p> |
| 12 | <p>Page 3 of the wizard opens indicating the Status of each device you attempted to add:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● a green check mark  indicates the EDS file can be added ● a blue informational icon  indicates a redundant file ● a red exclamation point  indicates an invalid EDS file <p>(Optional) Select a file in the list, then click View Selected File to open it.</p> |
| 13 | <p>Click Next to add the non-duplicate files.</p> <p>Page 4 of the wizard opens, indicating the action is complete.</p> |
| 14 | <p>Click Finish to close the wizard.</p> |
| 15 | <p>The next step is to update the Control Expert Hardware Catalog (<i>see page 103</i>), so that the newly added device is available for inclusion in a Control Expert project.</p> |

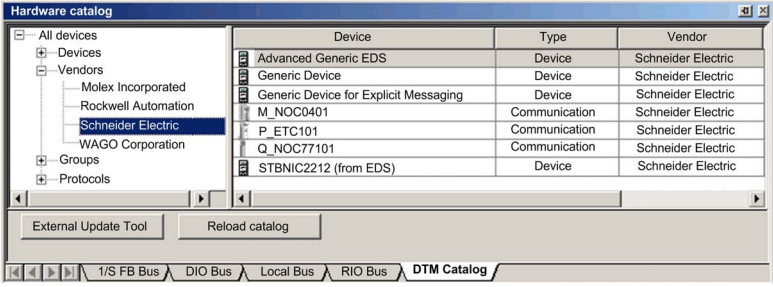
Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

Updating Hardware Catalog

After you have followed the manufacturer's instructions and installed a module or device DTM on your PC, the next step is to update the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog**. Updating the **Hardware Catalog** makes the new Ethernet module or device available for addition to your Control Expert application.

To update the **Hardware Catalog**:

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Control Expert main menu, select Tools → Hardware Catalog . The Hardware Catalog window opens. |
| 2 | In the Hardware Catalog window, select the DTM Catalog tab to display a module and device DTM list. At the time of initial software installation, the catalog displays no devices:  |
| 3 | Click the External Update Tool button. The FDT/DTM Catalog window opens:  |
| 4 | In the FDT/DTM Catalog window, click Update . The window refreshes itself, as indicated by the progress bar in the lower right corner of the window. |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------|--------|----------------------|--------|--------------------|----------------|--------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|--------|--------------------|----------|---------------|--------------------|----------|---------------|--------------------|------------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------|--------------------|
| 5 | After the update has finished, click Close . The FDT/DTM Catalog window closes and the Hardware Catalog displays. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | <p>In the Hardware Catalog window, click Reload catalog to refresh the DTM list.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Hardware catalog' window with a tree view on the left and a table on the right. The tree view shows a hierarchy: All devices > Vendors > Schneider Electric. The table has columns for Device, Type, and Vendor. The 'Reload catalog' button is visible at the bottom of the window.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Vendor</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Advanced Generic EDS</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device for Explicit Messaging</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M_NO0401</td> <td>Communication</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P_ETC101</td> <td>Communication</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Q_NO077101</td> <td>Communication</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STBNIC2212 (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Device | Type | Vendor | Advanced Generic EDS | Device | Schneider Electric | Generic Device | Device | Schneider Electric | Generic Device for Explicit Messaging | Device | Schneider Electric | M_NO0401 | Communication | Schneider Electric | P_ETC101 | Communication | Schneider Electric | Q_NO077101 | Communication | Schneider Electric | STBNIC2212 (from EDS) | Device | Schneider Electric |
| Device | Type | Vendor | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Advanced Generic EDS | Device | Schneider Electric | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Generic Device | Device | Schneider Electric | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Generic Device for Explicit Messaging | Device | Schneider Electric | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| M_NO0401 | Communication | Schneider Electric | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| P_ETC101 | Communication | Schneider Electric | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Q_NO077101 | Communication | Schneider Electric | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| STBNIC2212 (from EDS) | Device | Schneider Electric | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Remove an EDS File from the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

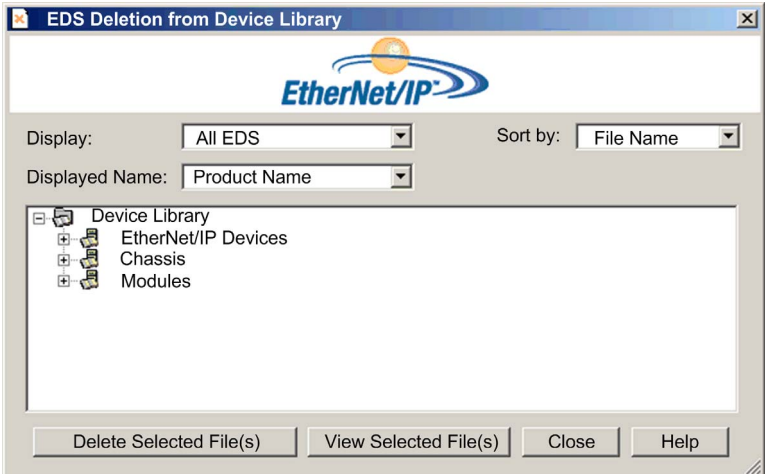
Overview

You can remove a module or device from the list of available devices in the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog** by removing its EDS file. When you remove an EDS file from the library, the device or module is no longer displayed by Control Expert in the **DTM Catalog** page of the **Hardware Catalog** window.

However, removing an EDS file from the library does not delete the file. Instead, the EDS file remains in its stored location and can again be added to the catalog (*see page 100*) at a future time.

Removing an EDS File from the Catalog

To remove an EDS file from the catalog:

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If the DTM Browser is not already open, in the Control Expert main menu select Tools → DTM Browser . |
| 2 | In the DTM Browser , select a communication module, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 3 | In the pop-up menu, select Device menu → Remove EDS from library . The following window opens:  |

| Step | Action | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Use the selection lists in the heading of this window to specify how EDS files will be displayed:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Display</td> <td> Filters the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All EDS (no filtering) ● Only Devices ● Only Chassis ● Only Modules </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sort by</td> <td> Sorts the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● File Name ● Manufacturer ● Category ● Device Name </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Displayed Name</td> <td> The description displayed for each device; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Catalog Name ● Product Name </td> </tr> </table> | Display | Filters the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All EDS (no filtering) ● Only Devices ● Only Chassis ● Only Modules | Sort by | Sorts the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● File Name ● Manufacturer ● Category ● Device Name | Displayed Name | The description displayed for each device; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Catalog Name ● Product Name |
| Display | Filters the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All EDS (no filtering) ● Only Devices ● Only Chassis ● Only Modules | | | | | | |
| Sort by | Sorts the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● File Name ● Manufacturer ● Category ● Device Name | | | | | | |
| Displayed Name | The description displayed for each device; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Catalog Name ● Product Name | | | | | | |
| 5 | <p>In the Device Library tree control, navigate to and select the EDS file you want to remove.</p> | | | | | | |
| 6 | <p>(Optional) Click the View Selected File button to display the read-only contents of the selected EDS file.</p> | | | | | | |
| 7 | <p>Click the Delete Selected File button. A message box opens.</p> | | | | | | |
| 8 | <p>Click Yes to remove the selected EDS file from the list.</p> | | | | | | |
| 9 | <p>When you have finished removing EDS files, click Close.</p> | | | | | | |
| 10 | <p>The next step is to update the Hardware Catalog (<i>see page 103</i>).</p> | | | | | | |

Section 3.2

Adding an EtherNet/IP Device to the Network

Overview

This section extends the sample Control Expert application, by describing how to:

- add an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module to your Control Expert application
- configure the STB NIC 2212 module
- configure EtherNet/IP connections linking the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module and the STB NIC 2212 network interface module
- configure I/O items for the Advantys Island

NOTE: The instructions in this chapter describe a single, specific device configuration example. Refer to the Control Expert help files for additional information about alternative configuration choices.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Setting Up Your Network | 108 |
| Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device | 110 |
| Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties | 112 |
| Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections | 117 |
| Connecting to the Advantys STB Island | 123 |
| Configuring I/O Items | 127 |

Setting Up Your Network

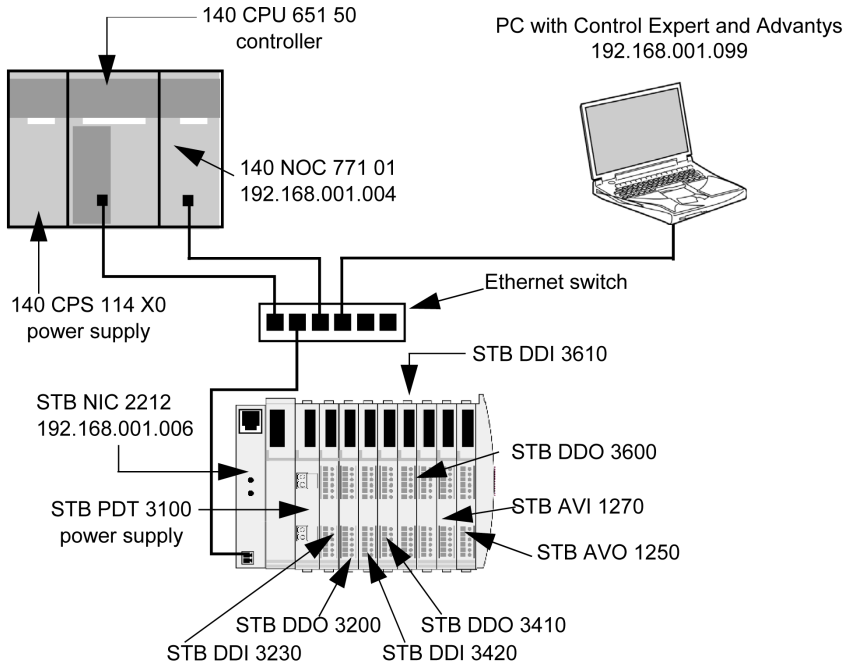
Overview

This sample network includes the following hardware and software:

- a controller rack with:
 - 140 CPS 114 X0, 115/230 VAC power supply
 - 140 CPU 651 50 controller
 - 140 NOC 771 01, Ethernet communication module
- a remote STB Advantys island with:
 - STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module
 - STB PDT 3100 power distribution module
 - STB DDI 3230 2 pt digital input module
 - STB DDO 3200 2 pt digital output module
 - STB DDI 3420 4 pt digital input module
 - STB DDO 3410 4 pt digital output module
 - STB DDI 3610 6 pt digital input module
 - STB DDO 3600 6 pt digital output module
 - STB AVI 1270 2 pt analog input module
 - STB AVO 1250 2 pt analog output module
- a PC running both Unity Pro (version 5.0 or later) and Advantys configuration software (version 5.0 or later)
- an Ethernet managed switch that is connected to the both the controller and island by means of twisted pair Ethernet cable and RJ45 connectors.

Network Topology

The Ethernet network devices used in this configuration include the following:



To re-create this example:

- use the IP addresses for your own configuration's:
 - PC
 - 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module
 - STB NIC 2212 network interface module
- check wiring

NOTE: Control Expert software running in the PC is used to configure the CPU 651 50 controller. In this example, the PC is indirectly wired to the CPU's Ethernet port via the Ethernet switch. Alternatively, you could bypass the switch and directly wire the PC to either the CPU's Modbus or USB ports.

Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device

Overview

You can use the Control Expert device library to add a remote device—in this example the STB NIC 2212 module—to your project. Only a remote device that is part of your Control Expert device library can be added to your project. Refer to the topic describing the Add EDS File Wizard (*see page 100*) for instructions on how to add a device EDS file to the device library.

Alternatively, with a remote device already added to your device library, you can use automatic device discovery to populate your project. Perform automatic device discovery by using the **Field bus discovery** command with a communication module selected in the **DTM Browser**.

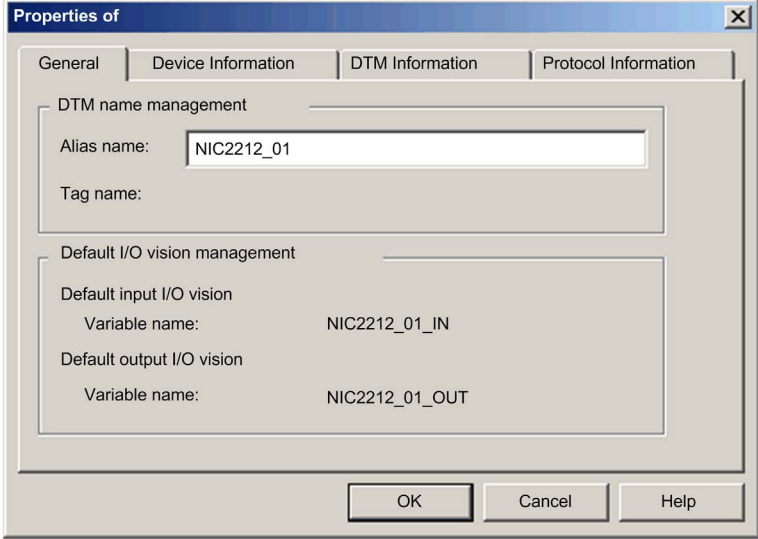
In either case, you need to update the list of available modules and devices, as follows:

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Control Expert main menu, select Tools → Hardware Catalog to display that window. |
| 2 | In the Hardware Catalog window, click on the DTM Catalog tab to open that page. |
| 2 | In the DTM Catalog page, click Reload catalog . The list of available devices, as displayed both in the DTM Catalog page and the Add dialog, is updated and reflects any device additions or deletions. |

Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device

To add the STB NIC 2212 to your project, follow these steps:

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|--------|---------|----------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|---------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------|--------|--------------------|------|---------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----|---------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----|---------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the Ethernet communication module node, and then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | In the pop-up menu, select Add... The following dialog opens: <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Vendor</th> <th>Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Advanced Generic EDS</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device for Explicit Messa...</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Modbus Device</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0e0e0;"> <td>STBNIC2212 (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>2.10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> Add DTM Close </div> </div> | Device | Type | Vendor | Version | Advanced Generic EDS | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | Generic Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | Generic Device for Explicit Messa... | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | Modbus Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | STBNIC2212 (from EDS) | Device | Schneider Electric | 2.10 | TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 |
| Device | Type | Vendor | Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Advanced Generic EDS | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Generic Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Generic Device for Explicit Messa... | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Modbus Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| STBNIC2212 (from EDS) | Device | Schneider Electric | 2.10 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | In the Add dialog, select the STBNIC2212 , then click Add DTM . The Properties window for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module opens. |
| 4 | <p>In the General page of the Properties window, edit the default Alias name, because retaining the original default name can result in duplicate module names. In this example, type in the name NIC2212_01:</p>  <p>When you edit the Alias name, Control Expert applies it as the base for both structure and variable names.</p> <p>NOTE: No additional editing needs to be performed in the pages of this window. Except for the Alias name field, parameters are read-only.</p> |
| 5 | Click OK . Control Expert adds the new STB NIC 2212 network interface module to the DTM Browser , beneath the communication module. |
| 6 | Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> (see page 54) for instructions on how to save your configuration edits. |

The next step is to configure the device you have just added to the project.

Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties

Overview

Use the pages of the **Device Editor** to view and edit settings for a remote device. Before you can edit the device settings, disconnect the DTM from the remote device (*see page 46*).

To display the DTM settings for a remote device, select the device name, which is found under the **Device List** node in the left pane of the **Device Editor**.

For the purposes of this example, which configures an STB NIC 2212 network interface module, select the node named **NIC2212 01**. The **Device Editor** displays the following pages:

- Properties
- Address Setting

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* (*see page 54*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Configuring the Properties Page

The **Properties** page for an STB NIC 2212 network interface module looks like this:

The screenshot shows a dialog box with two tabs: "Properties" (selected) and "Address Setting".

Properties

Number: 003 (dropdown menu) Active Configuration: Enabled (dropdown menu)

Comment: [Empty text area with scrollbars]

IO Structure Name [Default Name button]

Input

Structure Name: T_NIC2212_01_IN

Variable Name: NIC2212_01_IN

Output

Structure Name: T_NIC2212_01_OUT

Variable Name: NIC2212_01_OUT

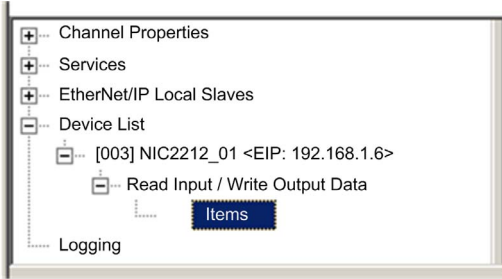
Items Management

Import Mode: Manual (dropdown menu) [Reimport Items button]

[OK] [Cancel] [Apply]

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

| Step | Action | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Properties section of the page, edit the following: | |
| | Number | The relative position of the device in the list, from 0 to 127. For this example, accept the default of 003 . |
| | Active Configuration | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enabled: adds this device to the Control Expert project configuration ● Disabled: removes this device from the Control Expert project configuration Accept the default setting of Enabled . |
| 2 | In the IO Structure Name section of the page, edit the following: | |
| | Input area: | |
| | Structure Name | (Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case T_NIC2212_01_IN . |
| | Variable Name | Accept the auto-generated input variable name (based on the alias name (<i>see page 110</i>)): NIC2212_01_IN . |
| | Output area: | |
| | Structure Name | (Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case T_NIC2212_01_OUT . |
| | Variable Name | Accept the auto-generated output variable name (based on the alias name): NIC2212_01_OUT . |
| | Default Name button | Restores the default variable and structure names. For this example, custom names are used instead of the default names. |

| Step | Action | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>In the Items Management section of the page, edit the following:</p> <p>Import mode</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Automatic: Select this if I/O items are pre-defined for the device in its DTM, and will not subsequently be edited. These items are automatically created and added to the configuration, and later updated if the items list if the device DTM changes. These auto-created items cannot be edited in the Device Editor. ● Manual: Select this if I/O items will be manually created or edited. If the device DTM pre-defines I/O items, those pre-defined I/O items are automatically created and added to the configuration, and can later be manually edited in the Device Editor. The I/O items list is not affected by changes to the device DTM. <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Because the STB NIC 2212 DTM does not contain pre-configured input and output items, select Manual. ● To view I/O items, navigate to and select the Items node in the left pane of the Device Editor, as follows:  <p>The screenshot shows a tree view in the Device Editor. The tree structure is as follows: Channel Properties (expanded), Services (expanded), EtherNet/IP Local Slaves (expanded), Device List (expanded), [003] NIC2212_01 <EIP: 192.168.1.6> (expanded), Read Input / Write Output Data (expanded), and Logging. The 'Items' node under 'Read Input / Write Output Data' is highlighted with a blue box.</p> |
| | Reimport Items | Imports the I/O items list from the device DTM, overwriting any manual I/O item edits. Enabled only when Import mode is set to Manual . |
| 4 | Click Apply to save your edits, and leave the window open for further edits. | |

Configuring the Address Setting Page

Use the **Address Setting** page to enable the DHCP client in the STB NIC 2212 network interface module. When the DHCP client is enabled in the remote device, it will obtain its IP address from the DHCP server in the Ethernet communication module. The **Address Setting** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Address Setting" with two tabs: "Properties" and "Address Setting". The "Address Setting" tab is selected. The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- Change Address:** A section containing an "IP Address:" field with the value "192 . 168 . 1 . 6".
- Address Server:** A section containing:
 - "DHCP for this device": A dropdown menu set to "Enabled".
 - "Identified by": A dropdown menu set to "Device Name".
 - "Identifier": A text field containing "NIC2212_01".
 - "Subnet Mask": A text field containing "255 . 255 . 255 . 0".
 - "Gateway": A text field containing "0 . 0 . 0 . 0".
- Buttons:** "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply" buttons are located at the bottom of the dialog.

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

| Step | Action | |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Address Settings page, edit the following: | |
| | IP Address | By default: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the first three octet values equal the first three octet values of the Ethernet communication module, and ● the fourth octet value equals this device Number setting—in this case, the default value would be 004. In our continuing example, type in the address 192.168.1.6 . |
| | DHCP for this Device | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enabled activates the DHCP client in this device. The device obtains its IP address from the DHCP service provided by the Ethernet communication module and appears on the auto-generated DHCP client list (<i>see page 71</i>). ● Disabled (the default) de-activates the DHCP client in this device. Select Enabled . |
| | Identified by | If DHCP for this Device is Enabled , this indicates the device identifier type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MAC Address, or ● Device Name Select Device Name . |
| | Identifier | If DHCP for this Device is Enabled , the specific device MAC Address or Name value. Accept the default setting of NIC2212_01 (based on the Alias name). |
| | Mask | The device subnet mask. The default = 255.255.255.0. Accept the default value. |
| Gateway | The gateway address used to reach this device. The default of 0.0.0.0 indicates this device is located on the same subnet as the Ethernet communication module. Accept the default value. | |
| 2 | Click OK to save your edits. | |

The next step is to configure the connection between the communication module and the remote device.

Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections

Overview

An EtherNet/IP connection provides a communication link between two or more devices. Properties for a single connection can be configured in the DTMs for the connected devices.

Use the **Device Editor** to view and edit connection settings. The following example presents settings for a connection between the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module and a remote STB NIC 2212 network interface module. Configuration edits are made to the DTMs for each device.

For DTM edits, disconnect the selected DTM from the actual module or device (*see page 46*).

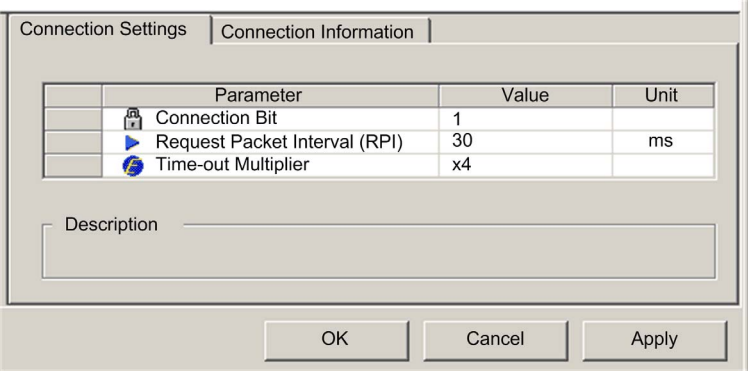
NOTE: Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor (*see page 54*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Configuring Connection Settings in the Communication Module DTM

Control Expert automatically creates a connection between a communication module and remote device, when the remote device is added to the Control Expert project. Thereafter, many edits to the connection can be made in the DTM for the remote device. However, some of the connection parameters can also be configured in the DTM for the communication module, as demonstrated below.

The following connection settings for this sample configuration can be set in the DTM for the communication module. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

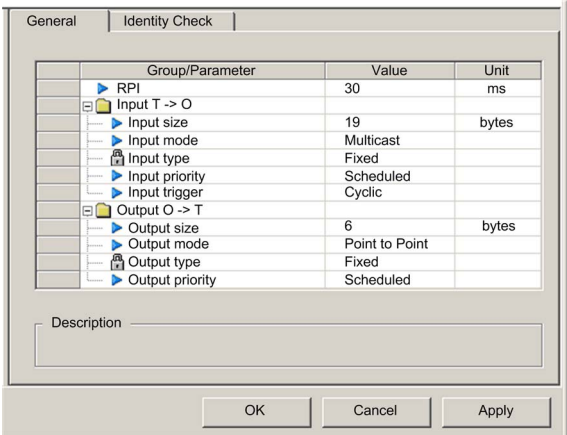
| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Open the DTM for the communications module—in this example NOC01—by selecting it in the Device Editor, then do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● in the main menu, select Edit → Open, or ● click the right mouse button, and select Open in the pop-up menu <p>The communication module DTM opens in the Device Editor.</p> |
| 2 | <p>In the navigation pane (on the left side of the Device Editor) select the node representing the connection from the communication module to the remote device, in this case: Device List → NIC2212_01 → Read Input / Write Output Data</p> |

| Step | Action | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Click on the Connection Settings tab to open the following page:</p>  <p>NOTE: You can view the Time-out Multiplier parameter, when Control Expert is operating in Advanced Mode.</p> | | | | | | |
| 4 | <p>In the Connection Settings page, edit the following settings:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Connection Bit</td> <td> <p>(Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, beginning at 0, and are prioritized according to the connection type, as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Modbus TCP connections 2 local slave connections 3 EtherNet/IP connections <p>NOTE: The initial value of this EtherNet/IP connection is 1, because only a single local slave has previously been enabled. When a single Modbus TCP connection is created, the value of this connection bit offset changes to 2.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Request Packet Interval (RPI)</td> <td> <p>The refresh period for this connection, from 2 to 65535 ms. Default = 12 ms. Type in 30 ms.</p> <p>NOTE: This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Time-out Multiplier</td> <td> <p>This setting, multiplied against the RPI, produces a value that triggers an inactivity timeout. Setting selections include: x4, x8, x16, x32, x64, x128, x256 and x512.</p> <p>Accept the default of x4.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>NOTE: The Connection Information page is read-only when the communication module is selected. This information needs to be set in the DTM for the remote device.</p> | Connection Bit | <p>(Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, beginning at 0, and are prioritized according to the connection type, as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Modbus TCP connections 2 local slave connections 3 EtherNet/IP connections <p>NOTE: The initial value of this EtherNet/IP connection is 1, because only a single local slave has previously been enabled. When a single Modbus TCP connection is created, the value of this connection bit offset changes to 2.</p> | Request Packet Interval (RPI) | <p>The refresh period for this connection, from 2 to 65535 ms. Default = 12 ms. Type in 30 ms.</p> <p>NOTE: This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.</p> | Time-out Multiplier | <p>This setting, multiplied against the RPI, produces a value that triggers an inactivity timeout. Setting selections include: x4, x8, x16, x32, x64, x128, x256 and x512.</p> <p>Accept the default of x4.</p> |
| Connection Bit | <p>(Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, beginning at 0, and are prioritized according to the connection type, as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Modbus TCP connections 2 local slave connections 3 EtherNet/IP connections <p>NOTE: The initial value of this EtherNet/IP connection is 1, because only a single local slave has previously been enabled. When a single Modbus TCP connection is created, the value of this connection bit offset changes to 2.</p> | | | | | | |
| Request Packet Interval (RPI) | <p>The refresh period for this connection, from 2 to 65535 ms. Default = 12 ms. Type in 30 ms.</p> <p>NOTE: This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.</p> | | | | | | |
| Time-out Multiplier | <p>This setting, multiplied against the RPI, produces a value that triggers an inactivity timeout. Setting selections include: x4, x8, x16, x32, x64, x128, x256 and x512.</p> <p>Accept the default of x4.</p> | | | | | | |
| 5 | Click OK to save your settings. | | | | | | |

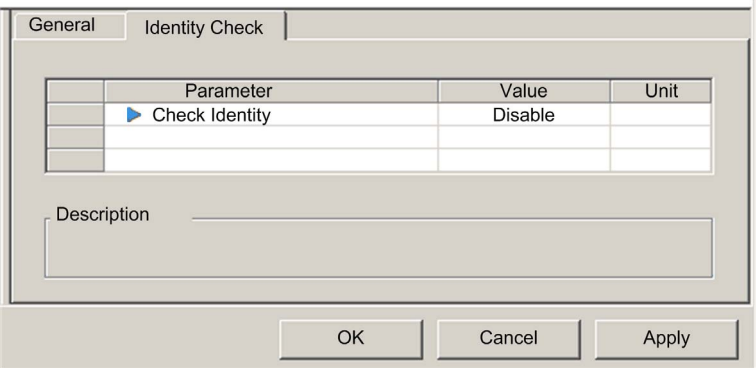
Configuring Connection Settings in the Remote Device DTM

Connections between a communication module and remote device can be created and edited in the DTM for the remote device.

In this example, the following configuration edits are made to the connection that Control Expert automatically created, when the remote device was added to the project. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|-------|------------|-----------|--|------------|-------|--|----------------|-----------|--|---------------|--------|--|---------------|--|--|-------------|---|-------|-------------|----------------|--|-------------|-------|--|-----------------|-----------|--|
| 1 | <p>Open the DTM for the remote device—in this example NIC2212_01—by selecting it in the Device Editor, then do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● in the main menu, select Edit → Open, or ● click the right mouse button, and select Open in the pop-up menu <p>The remote device DTM opens in the Device Editor.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | <p>In the navigation pane (on the left side of the Device Editor), confirm that the remote device connection is of the type Read Input / Write Output Data. To view the connection type, select NIC2212_01 in the left pane of the Device Editor. If the connection type is not of the type Read Input / Write Output Data, delete the existing connection and add a new one, as follows:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>a</td> <td>With the connection selected in the left pane, click the Remove Connection button. The existing connection is removed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>b</td> <td>Click the Add Connection button. The Select the connection to add dialog opens.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>c</td> <td>Use the scroll buttons on the drop down list to display and select the Read Input / Write Output Data connection type.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>d</td> <td>Click OK to close the Select the connection to add dialog. The new connection node appears.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>e</td> <td>Click Apply to save the new connection, leaving the Device Editor open for additional edits.</td> </tr> </table> | a | With the connection selected in the left pane, click the Remove Connection button. The existing connection is removed. | b | Click the Add Connection button. The Select the connection to add dialog opens. | c | Use the scroll buttons on the drop down list to display and select the Read Input / Write Output Data connection type. | d | Click OK to close the Select the connection to add dialog. The new connection node appears. | e | Click Apply to save the new connection, leaving the Device Editor open for additional edits. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| a | With the connection selected in the left pane, click the Remove Connection button. The existing connection is removed. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| b | Click the Add Connection button. The Select the connection to add dialog opens. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| c | Use the scroll buttons on the drop down list to display and select the Read Input / Write Output Data connection type. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| d | Click OK to close the Select the connection to add dialog. The new connection node appears. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| e | Click Apply to save the new connection, leaving the Device Editor open for additional edits. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | <p>With the Read Input / Write Output Data node selected, click on the General tab:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a dialog box with two tabs: 'General' and 'Identity Check'. The 'General' tab is active and contains a table of parameters:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Group/Parameter</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Unit</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RPI</td> <td>30</td> <td>ms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Input T -> O</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Input size</td> <td>19</td> <td>bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Input mode</td> <td>Multicast</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Input type</td> <td>Fixed</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Input priority</td> <td>Scheduled</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Input trigger</td> <td>Cyclic</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Output O -> T</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Output size</td> <td>6</td> <td>bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Output mode</td> <td>Point to Point</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Output type</td> <td>Fixed</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Output priority</td> <td>Scheduled</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Below the table is a 'Description' text area and three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.</p> | Group/Parameter | Value | Unit | RPI | 30 | ms | Input T -> O | | | Input size | 19 | bytes | Input mode | Multicast | | Input type | Fixed | | Input priority | Scheduled | | Input trigger | Cyclic | | Output O -> T | | | Output size | 6 | bytes | Output mode | Point to Point | | Output type | Fixed | | Output priority | Scheduled | |
| Group/Parameter | Value | Unit | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| RPI | 30 | ms | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input T -> O | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input size | 19 | bytes | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input mode | Multicast | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input type | Fixed | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input priority | Scheduled | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input trigger | Cyclic | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Output O -> T | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Output size | 6 | bytes | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Output mode | Point to Point | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Output type | Fixed | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Output priority | Scheduled | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Step | Action | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | In the General page, edit the following settings: | |
| | RPI | The refresh period for this connection. Accept the value of 30 ms . (This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.) |
| | Input size | The number of bytes reserved for input data, from 0 to 505. Type in 19 . NOTE: Control Expert reserves input data in increments of 2 bytes (1 word). In this example, typing in the value of 19 bytes reserves 20 bytes of input memory. |
| | Input mode | The transmission type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Multicast ● Point to Point Accept the default selection of Multicast . |
| | Input type | Ethernet packet type—fixed or variable length—to be transmitted. Only Fixed length packets are supported. |
| | Input priority | The transmission priority. The value depends upon the device DTM. Values can include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Low ● High ● Scheduled NOTE: For remote modules that support more than one priority value, you can use this setting to specify the order in which the Ethernet communication module will handle packets. For more information, refer to the topic describing QoS Packet Prioritization (<i>see Premium using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, TSX ETC 101 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual</i>). For the purpose of this example, accept the default selection of Scheduled . |
| | Input trigger | The transmission trigger. Values can include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cyclic ● Change of state or application For input I/O data, select Cyclic . |
| | Output size | The number of bytes reserved for output data, from to 509. Type in 6 . NOTE: Control Expert reserves output data in increments of 2 bytes (1 word). |
| | Output mode | Accept the default selection of Point to Point . |
| | Output type | (Read-only). Only Fixed length packets are supported. |
| Output priority | Accept the default selection of Scheduled . | |

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Click on the Identity Check tab to open the following page:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a configuration window with two tabs: 'General' and 'Identity Check'. The 'Identity Check' tab is selected. Inside the window, there is a table with three columns: 'Parameter', 'Value', and 'Unit'. The first row of the table contains 'Check Identity' in the 'Parameter' column, 'Disable' in the 'Value' column, and an empty 'Unit' column. Below the table is a text area labeled 'Description'. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.</p> |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 6 | <p>In the Identity Check page, set rules for comparing the identity of the remote device, as defined by its DTM or EDS file, against the identity of the actual remote device located on the network. Complete the following settings:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Check Identity</td> <td> <p>Define the rule Control Expert will use in comparing the configured versus the actual remote device. Settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Must match exactly—the DTM or EDS file exactly matches the remote device ● Disable—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is filled with zero values (the default setting) ● Must be compatible—if the remote device is not the same as defined by the DTM/EDS, it emulates the DTM/EDS definitions ● None—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is omitted ● Custom—enables the following 6 parameter settings, to be set individually. <p>For this example, select Disable.</p> </td> </tr> </table> <p>If Check identity is set to Custom, complete the following 6 fields:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Compatibility Mode</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● True—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need only be compatible ● False—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and the remote device need to match exactly </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Minor Version</td> <td rowspan="5"> <p>For each of the parameters to the left, select one of the following settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Compatible—include the parameter in the test ● Not checked—do not include the parameter in the test </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Major Version</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Product Code</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Product Type</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Product Vendor</td> </tr> </table> | Check Identity | <p>Define the rule Control Expert will use in comparing the configured versus the actual remote device. Settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Must match exactly—the DTM or EDS file exactly matches the remote device ● Disable—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is filled with zero values (the default setting) ● Must be compatible—if the remote device is not the same as defined by the DTM/EDS, it emulates the DTM/EDS definitions ● None—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is omitted ● Custom—enables the following 6 parameter settings, to be set individually. <p>For this example, select Disable.</p> | Compatibility Mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● True—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need only be compatible ● False—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and the remote device need to match exactly | Minor Version | <p>For each of the parameters to the left, select one of the following settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Compatible—include the parameter in the test ● Not checked—do not include the parameter in the test | Major Version | Product Code | Product Type | Product Vendor |
| Check Identity | <p>Define the rule Control Expert will use in comparing the configured versus the actual remote device. Settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Must match exactly—the DTM or EDS file exactly matches the remote device ● Disable—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is filled with zero values (the default setting) ● Must be compatible—if the remote device is not the same as defined by the DTM/EDS, it emulates the DTM/EDS definitions ● None—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is omitted ● Custom—enables the following 6 parameter settings, to be set individually. <p>For this example, select Disable.</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Compatibility Mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● True—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need only be compatible ● False—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and the remote device need to match exactly | | | | | | | | | | |
| Minor Version | <p>For each of the parameters to the left, select one of the following settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Compatible—include the parameter in the test ● Not checked—do not include the parameter in the test | | | | | | | | | | |
| Major Version | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Product Code | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Product Type | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Product Vendor | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Click OK to save your settings. | | | | | | | | | | |

The next step is to configure I/O settings.

Connecting to the Advantys STB Island

Overview

In this example, you will use the Advantys configuration software running on your PC to:

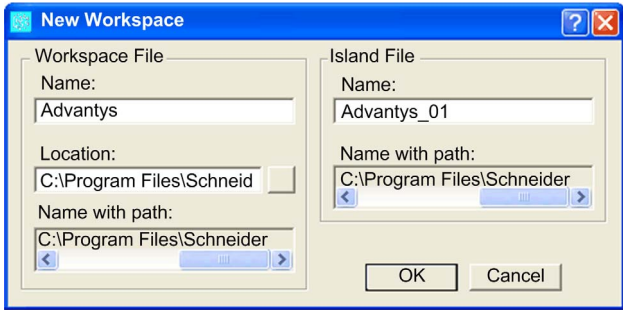
- connect the Advantys configuration software to the STB NIC 2212 and the 8 I/O modules that comprise the Advantys STB island
- upload Advantys STB island configuration to the Advantys configuration software in your PC
- display a fieldbus image for the Advantys STB island showing the relative location of:
 - status information
 - input data
 - output data

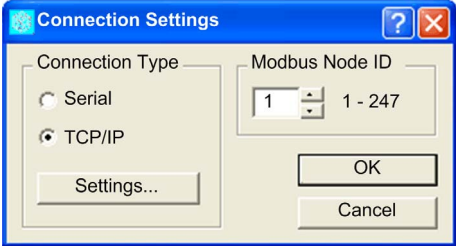
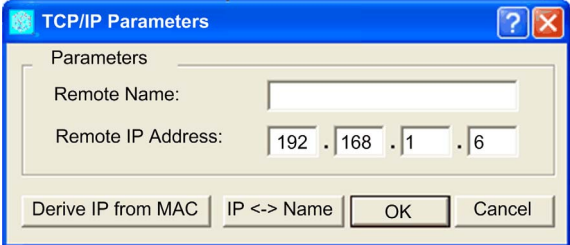
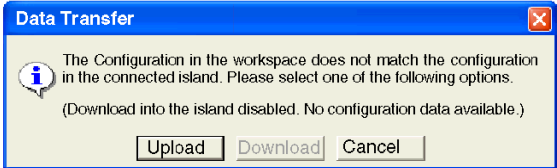
Using the data presented in the fieldbus image, you can use Control Expert to create input and output items that map to specific status, input, output, and output echo data.

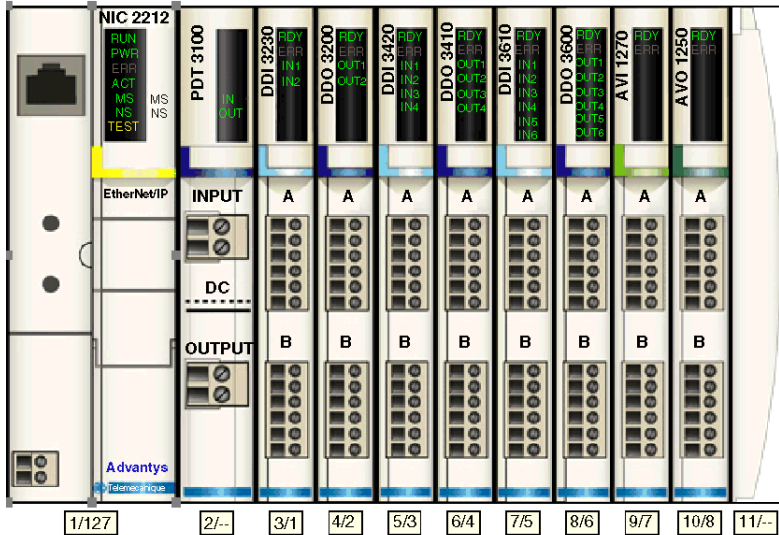
NOTE: Before proceeding with the following instructions, confirm that you have auto-configured the Advantys STB island by pressing the **RST** button on the front of the STB NIC 2212 module.

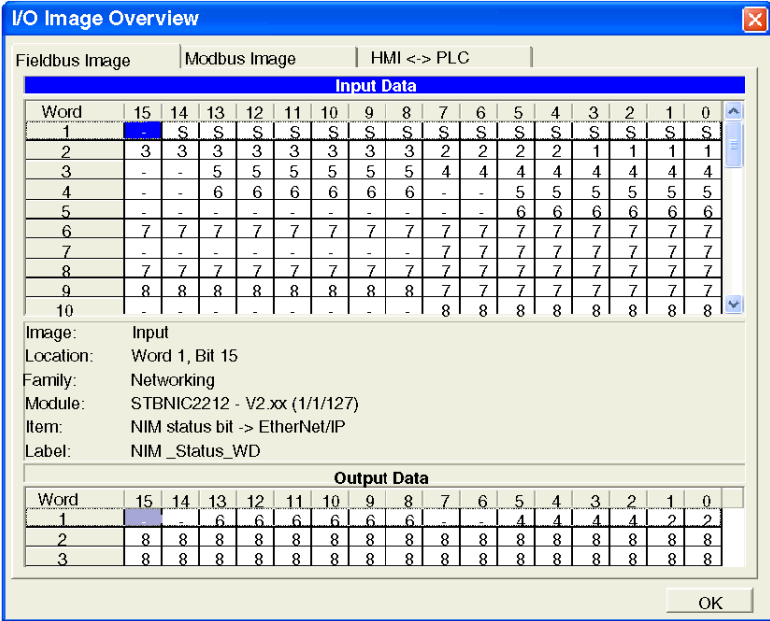
Making the Connection

To connect to the STB NIC 2212 and I/O modules using the Advantys configuration software:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Startup the Advantys configuration software on your PC. A dialog opens displaying available project types. |
| 2 | Select STB . |
| 3 | Select File → New Workspace . The New Workspace window opens (below). |
| 4 | <p>For this example, type in the following field values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● for the field Workspace File type in Advantys ● for the field Island File type in Advantys_01  |
| 5 | Click OK . The Advantys configuration software displays an empty DIN rail in the center of the screen. |

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Select Online → Connection Settings . The Connection Settings window opens (below). |
| 7 | <p>In the Connection Settings window, accept the Modbus Node ID default setting of 1, select TCP/IP, and click the Settings... button:</p>  <p>The TCP/IP Parameters dialog opens (below).</p> |
| 8 | <p>In the Remote IP Address field, type in the IP address for the STB NIC 2212, in this example: 192.168.1.6.</p>  |
| 9 | Click OK to close the TCP/IP Parameters dialog, and click OK again to close the Connection Settings dialog. |
| 10 | <p>Select Online → Connect. The Data Transfer dialog opens (below):</p>  |

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 11 | <p>Select Upload in the Data Transfer dialog. The island workspace is populated with island data and shows the STB NIC 2212 and the island modules (below):</p>  <p>Note: A box appears beneath each module containing one or two integers—for example 3/1. These integers serve the following purpose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The left-side integer (3 in this example) identifies the module's physical position—left to right—among the modules in the rack. • The right-side integer (1 in this example) identifies the module's relative position—left to right—among only data producing/receiving modules. If the module is not a data producing/receiving module (e.g. a power supply, or end of segment module) no right-side integer appears. |

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12 | <p>Select Island → I/O Image Overview. The I/O Image window opens to the Fieldbus Image page:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'I/O Image Overview' window with the 'Fieldbus Image' tab selected. It contains two tables: 'Input Data' and 'Output Data'. The 'Input Data' table has 10 rows (Word 1-10) and 16 columns (15-0). The 'Output Data' table has 3 rows (Word 1-3) and 16 columns (15-0). Below the tables, there are fields for 'Image: Input', 'Location: Word 1, Bit 15', 'Family: Networking', 'Module: STBNIC2212 - V2.xx (1/1/127)', 'Item: NIM status bit -> EtherNet/IP', and 'Label: NIM_Status_WD'. An 'OK' button is at the bottom right.</p> <p>Each table cell contains one of the following alpha-numeric indicators:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● S indicates a status bit for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module ● an integer identifies the relative position—from left to right—of a data producing/receiving module with input or output data in that cell. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the STB DDI 3230 input module is the first data producing or receiving module in the rack; its data is designated by the integer 1 in bits 0 - 3 of word 2 in the Input Data table ○ the STB DDO 3600 output module is the sixth data producing module in the rack; its status and output echo data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 8 - 13 of word 4 and in bits 0 - 5 of word 5 in the Input Data table; its output data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 8 - 13 of word 1 in the Output Data table <p>Notes: Select a cell in either the Input Data or Output Data tables to display—in the middle of the page—a description of the cell data and its source module. Convert the size of the Input Data table and the Output Data table from words to bytes (i.e. divide by 2), then use that data as the values for the Input Size (19) and Output Size (6) parameters when configuring the remote device's connection properties.</p> |

Configuring I/O Items

Overview

The final task in this example is to add I/O items to the configuration of the STB NIC 2212 and its 8 I/O modules. To accomplish this:

- use the Advantys configuration software to identify the relative position of each I/O module's inputs and outputs
- use the Control Expert **Device Editor** to create input and output items, defining each item's:
 - name
 - data type

I/O Item Types and Sizes

The goal is to create a collection of input items and output items that equal the input size and output size specified for the STB NIC 2212 (*see page 119*). In this example, items need to be created for:

- 19 bytes of inputs
- 6 bytes of outputs

The Control Expert **Device Editor** provides great flexibility in creating input and output items. You can create input and output items in groups of 1 or more single bits, 8-bit bytes, 16-bit words, 32-bit dwords, or 32-bit IEEE floating values. The number of items you create depends upon the data type and size of each item.

In the sample project, the following items were created:

- discrete bits for digital inputs and outputs
- 8-bit bytes or 16-bit words for analog inputs and outputs

Mapping Input and Output Items

Use the **Fieldbus Image** page of the **I/O Image Overview** window in the Advantys configuration software to identify the number and type of I/O items you need to create, as follows:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Advantys configuration software, select Island → I/O Image Overview . The I/O Image window opens to the Fieldbus Image page. |
| 2 | Select the first cell (word 1, cell 0) in the Input Data table to display, in the middle of the page, a description of the cell data and its source module. |
| 3 | Make a note of the word, bit(s), module and item information for that cell. |
| 4 | Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each cell containing either an S or an integer. |

NOTE: The Fieldbus Image presents input and output data in the form of 16-bit words (starting with word 1). You need to rearrange this data for the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, which presents the same data in the form of 8-bit bytes (starting with byte 0).

NOTE: When you create items, align items of data type `WORD` and `DWORD` on a 16-bit boundary.

This process yields the following tables of input and output data:

Input Data:

| Advantys Fieldbus Image | | Control Expert EIP Items | | STB Module | Description |
|-------------------------|--------|--------------------------|--------|------------|--------------------|
| Word | Bit(s) | Byte | Bit(s) | | |
| 1 | 0-15 | 0 | 0-7 | NIC 2212 | low byte status |
| | | 1 | 0-7 | | high byte status |
| 2 | 0-1 | 2 | 0-1 | DDI 3230 | input data |
| | 2-3 | | 2-3 | DDI 3230 | input status |
| | 4-5 | | 4-5 | DDO 3200 | output data echo |
| | 6-7 | | 6-7 | DDO 3200 | output status |
| | 8-11 | 3 | 0-3 | DDI 3420 | input data |
| | 12-15 | | 4-7 | DDI 3420 | input status |
| 3 | 0-3 | 4 | 0-3 | DDO 3410 | output data echo |
| | 4-7 | | 4-7 | DDO 3410 | output status |
| | 8-13 | 5 | 0-5 | DDI 3610 | input data |
| | 14-15 | | 6-7 | NA | not used |
| 4 | 0-5 | 6 | 0-5 | DDI 3610 | input status |
| | 6-7 | | 6-7 | NA | not used |
| | 8-13 | 7 | 0-5 | DDO 3600 | output data echo |
| | 14-15 | | 6-7 | NA | not used |
| 5 | 0-5 | 8 | 0-5 | DDO 3600 | output status |
| | 6-15 | | 8 | 6-7 | NA |
| | | 9 | 0-7 | | |
| 6 | 0-15 | 10 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input data ch 1 |
| | | 11 | 0-7 | | |
| 7 | 0-7 | 12 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input status ch 1 |
| | 8-15 | 13 | 0-7 | NA | not used |
| 8 | 0-15 | 14 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input data ch 2 |
| | | 15 | 0-7 | | |
| 9 | 0-7 | 16 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input status ch 2 |
| | 8-15 | 17 | 0-7 | AVO 1250 | output status ch 1 |
| 10 | 0-7 | 18 | 0-7 | AVO 1250 | output status ch 2 |
| | 8-15 | NA | NA | NA | not used |

Output Data:

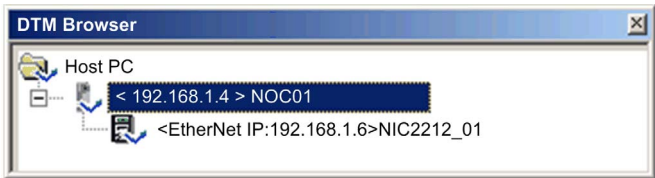
| Advantys Fieldbus Image | | Control Expert EIP Items | | Module | Description |
|-------------------------|--------|--------------------------|--------|----------|------------------|
| Word | Bit(s) | Byte | Bit(s) | | |
| 1 | 0-1 | 0 | 0-1 | DDO 3200 | output data |
| | 2-5 | | 2-5 | DDO 3410 | output data |
| | 6-7 | | 6-7 | NA | not used |
| | 8-13 | 1 | 0-5 | DDO 3600 | output data |
| | 14-15 | | 6-7 | NA | not used |
| 2 | 0-15 | 2 | 0-7 | AVO 1250 | output data ch 1 |
| | | 3 | 0-7 | | |
| 3 | 0-15 | 4 | 0-7 | AVO 1250 | output data ch 2 |
| | | 5 | 0-7 | | |

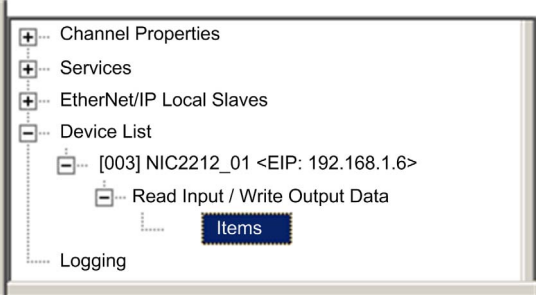
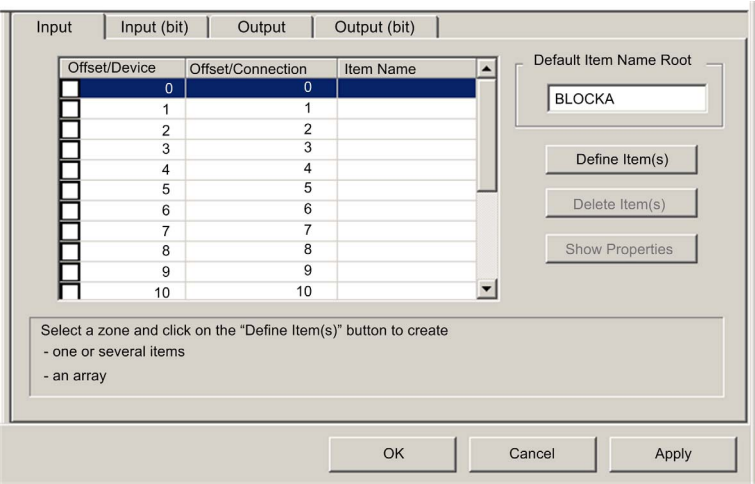
This example shows you how to create 19 bytes of inputs and 6 bytes of outputs. To achieve a more efficient usage of space, this example creates items in the following sequence:

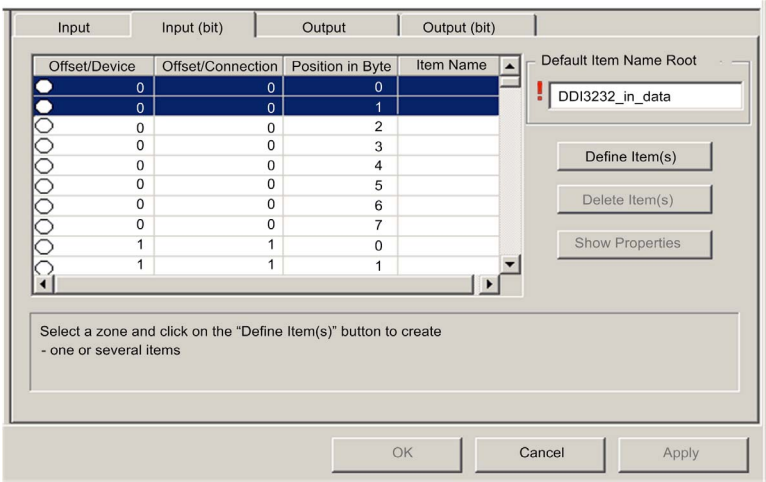
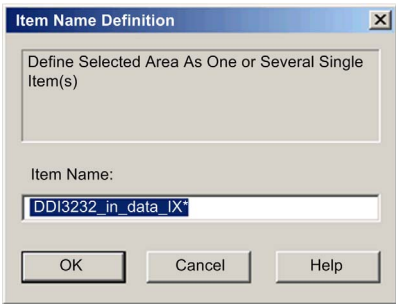
- input bit items
- input byte and word items
- output bit items
- output byte and word items

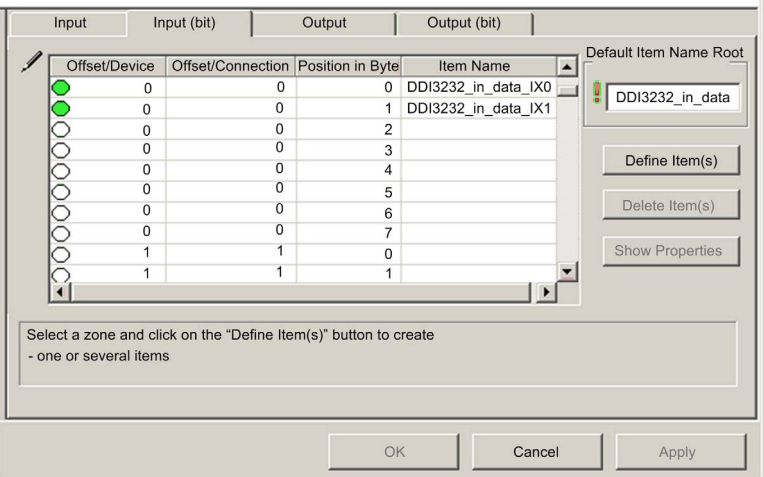
Creating Input Bit Items

To create input bit items for the STB NIC 2212 example, beginning with 16 discrete inputs for NIC 2212 status:

| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>In the DTM Browser, select the communication module:</p>  |
| 2 | <p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • in the main menu, select Edit → Open, or • click the right mouse button, then select Open in the pop-up menu. <p>The Device Editor opens, displaying the DTM for the communication module.</p> |

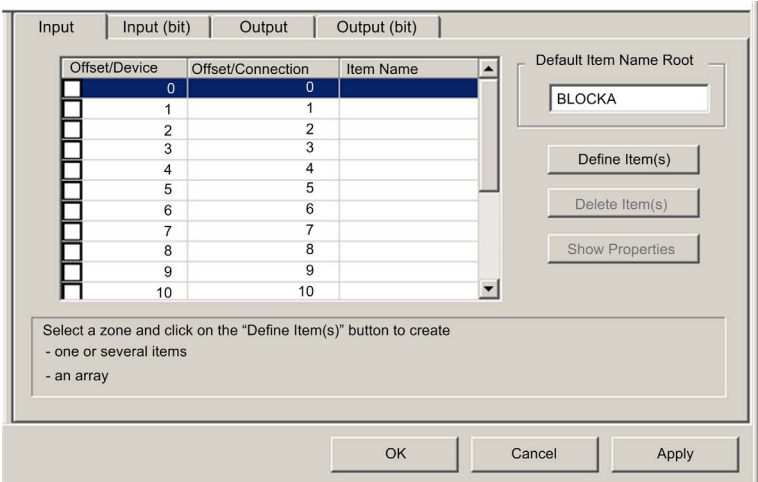
| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>In the left pane of the Device Editor, navigate to and select the Items node for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module:</p>  |
| 4 | <p>The Items window opens:</p>  |
| 5 | <p>Select the Input (bit) tab to display that page.</p> |
| 6 | <p>In the Input (bit) page, type the following default root name—representing device status—into the Default Items Name Root input box type: DDI3232_in_data.</p> |

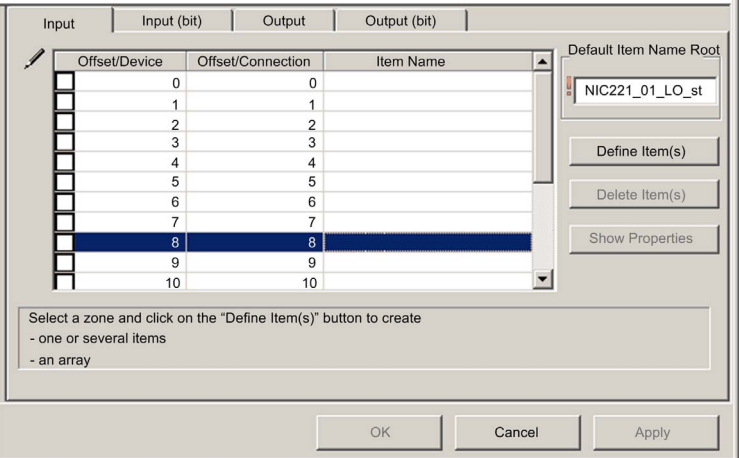
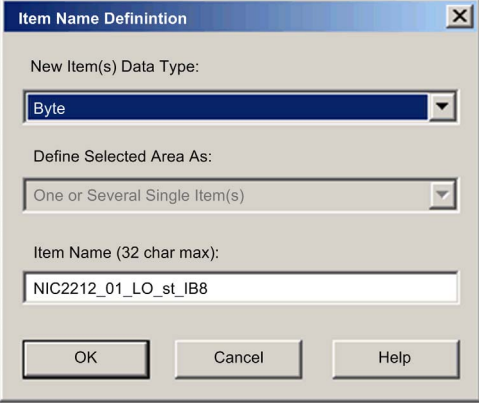
| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|----------------------------------|---|---|---|--|----------------------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|
| 7 | <p>In the Items List, select the first 2 rows in the table. (These rows represent bits 0-1 in byte.)</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Input</th> <th>Input (bit)</th> <th>Output</th> <th>Output (bit)</th> <th>Item Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>6</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>7</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="radio"/></td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create - one or several items</p> | Input | Input (bit) | Output | Output (bit) | Item Name | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 0 | | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 1 | | <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 2 | | <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 3 | | <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 4 | | <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 5 | | <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 6 | | <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 7 | | <input type="radio"/> | 1 | 1 | 0 | | <input type="radio"/> | 1 | 1 | 1 | |
| Input | Input (bit) | Output | Output (bit) | Item Name | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 0 | 0 | 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 1 | 1 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> | 1 | 1 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  <p>Note: The asterisk (*) indicates a series of discrete items with the same root name will be created.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

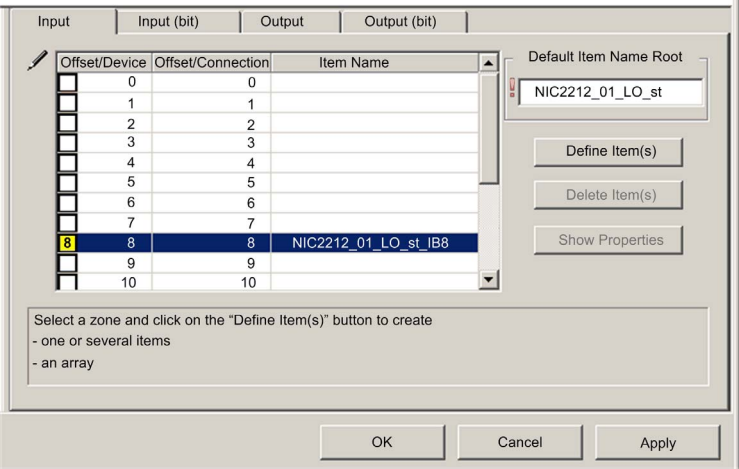
| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9 | <p>Accept the default Item Name and click OK. 2 discrete input items are created:</p>  |
| 10 | Click Apply to save the items, and leave the page open. |
| 11 | <p>Repeat steps 6 - 10 for each group of discrete input items you need to create. In this example, that includes items for each of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Byte: 0, Bits: 2-3, Default Items Name Root: DDI3230_in_st ● Byte: 0, Bits: 4-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_echo ● Byte: 0, Bits: 6-7, Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_st ● Byte: 1, Bits: 0-3, Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_data ● Byte: 1, Bits: 4-7, Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_st ● Byte: 2, Bits: 0-3, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_echo ● Byte: 2, Bits: 4-7, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_st ● Byte: 3, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_data ● Byte: 4, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_st ● Byte: 5, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_echo ● Byte: 6, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_st |
| 12 | The next task is to create input bytes and words. |

Creating Input Items

To create input items for the STB NIC 2212 example, begin with an input data byte containing low byte status for the STB NIC 2212 module:

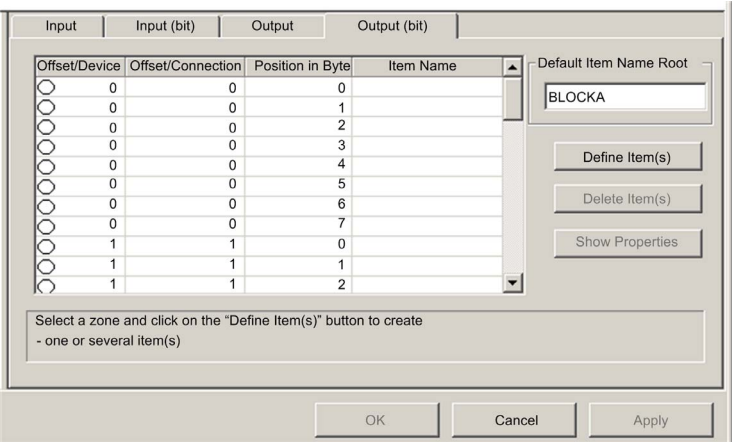
| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Select the Input tab to return to that page:</p>  <p>NOTE: In this example, both the Offset/Device and Offset/Connection columns represent the byte address. The items you create will be either an 8-bit byte or a 16-bit word</p> |
| 2 | In the Default Item Name Root input box type: NIC22212_01_LO_st . |

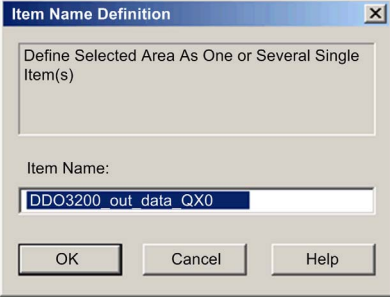
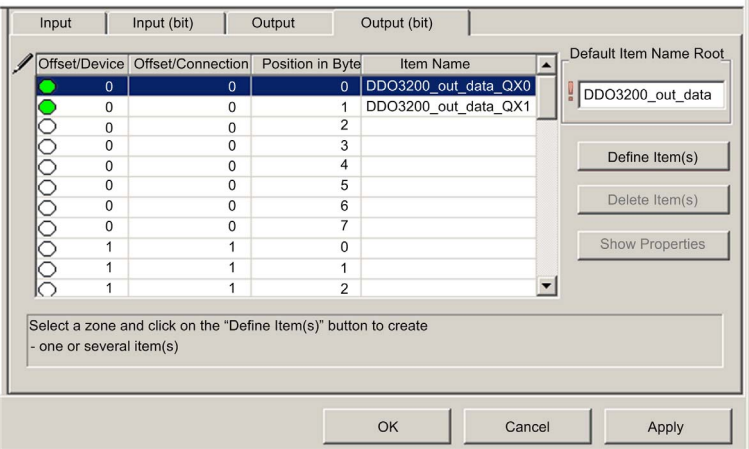
| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Starting at the first available whole input word, select the single row at byte 8:</p>  <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - one or several items - an array |
| 4 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  |

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Select Byte as the New Item(s) Data Type, then click OK. A new byte item is created:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a configuration window with a table and several buttons. The table has three columns: 'Offset/Device', 'Offset/Connection', and 'Item Name'. The rows are numbered 0 to 10. Row 8 is highlighted in blue, and its 'Item Name' is 'NIC2212_01_LO_st_IB8'. To the right of the table is a 'Default Item Name Root' field containing 'NIC2212_01_LO_st'. Below this field are three buttons: 'Define Item(s)', 'Delete Item(s)', and 'Show Properties'. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'. Below the table, there is a text box with instructions: 'Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create - one or several items - an array'.</p> |
| 6 | Click Apply to save the new items, and leave the page open. |
| 7 | <p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each byte or word input item you need to create.</p> <p>NOTE: The number of rows you select for a new item depends upon the item type. If the item is a:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● byte: select a single row ● word: select two rows, beginning at the next available whole word <p>In this example, you will create items for each of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Byte: 9, Default Items Name Root: NIC2212_01_HI_st ● Word: 10, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_data ● Byte: 12, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_st ● Word: 14-15, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_data ● Byte: 16, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_st ● Byte: 17, Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH1_out_st ● Byte: 18, Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH2_out_st |
| 8 | The next task is to create output bits. |

Creating Output Bit Items

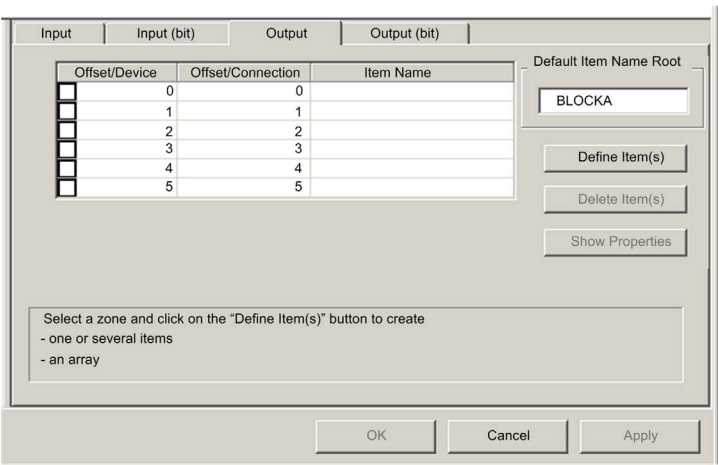
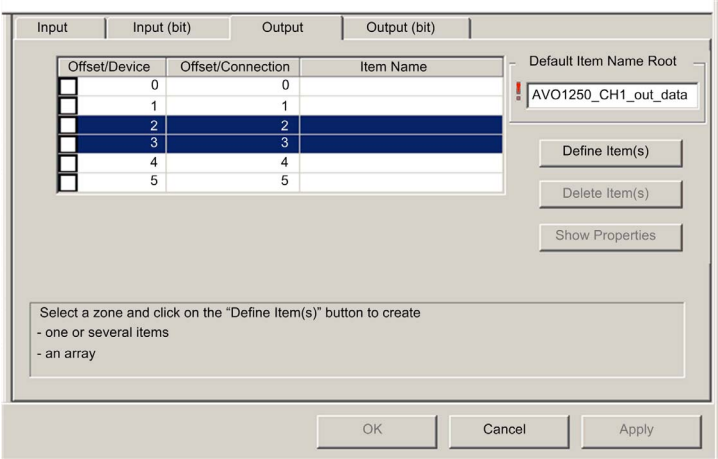
To create output bit items for the STB NIC 2212 example, beginning with 2 output bits for the STB DDO3200 module:

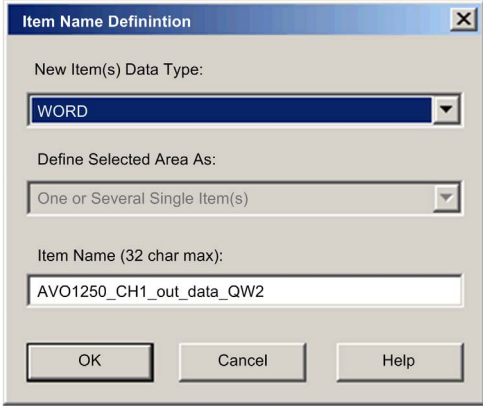
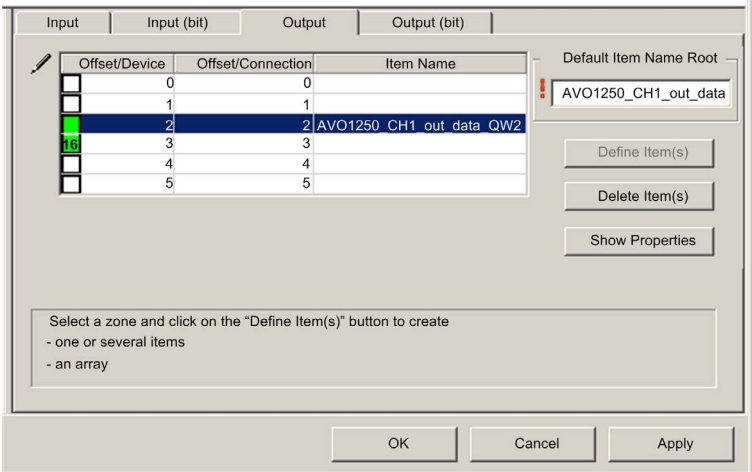
| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Select the Output (bit) tab to open the following page:</p>  <p>NOTE: Both the Offset/Device and Offset/Connection columns represent the byte address of an output, while the Position in Byte column indicates the bit position—within the byte—of each discrete output item.</p> |
| 2 | In the Default Items Name Root input box type: DDO3200_out_data . |
| 3 | In the Items List , select the rows that correspond to bits 0-1 in byte 0—i.e., the first 2 rows: |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------|---|---|---|----------------------|---|---|---|----------------------|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|
| 4 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  <p>NOTE: The asterisk (*) indicates a series of discrete items with the same root name will be created.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | <p>Accept the default output name and click OK. 2 discrete output items are created:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Offset/Device</th> <th>Offset/Connection</th> <th>Position in Byte</th> <th>Item Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>DDO3200_out_data_QX0</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>DDO3200_out_data_QX1</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>4</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>6</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create - one or several item(s)</p> | Offset/Device | Offset/Connection | Position in Byte | Item Name | 0 | 0 | 0 | DDO3200_out_data_QX0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | DDO3200_out_data_QX1 | 0 | 0 | 2 | | 0 | 0 | 3 | | 0 | 0 | 4 | | 0 | 0 | 5 | | 0 | 0 | 6 | | 0 | 0 | 7 | | 1 | 1 | 0 | | 1 | 1 | 1 | | 1 | 1 | 2 | |
| Offset/Device | Offset/Connection | Position in Byte | Item Name | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | DDO3200_out_data_QX0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | DDO3200_out_data_QX1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | <p>Click Apply to save the new items, and leave the page open.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | <p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each group of discrete output items you need to create. In this example, that includes items for each of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Byte: 0, Bits: 2-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_data ● Byte: 1, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_data | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | <p>The next task is to create output bytes and words.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Creating Numeric Output Items

To create output items for the STB NIC 2212, example, beginning with a output data word for the STB AVO 1250 module:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Click on the Output tab to open the following page:</p>  <p>NOTE: In this example, both the Offset/Device and Offset/Connection columns represent the byte address. The items you create will be 16-bit words comprising 2 bytes.</p> |
| 2 | <p>In the Default Item Name Root input box type: AVO1250_CH1_out_data.</p> |
| 3 | <p>Starting at the next available whole word, select 2 rows: 2 and 3:</p>  |

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  |
| 5 | <p>Accept the default output name and click OK. the following output word item is created:</p>  |
| 6 | Click Apply to save the new item and leave the page open. |
| 7 | Repeat steps 2 - 6 for the AVO 1250 channel 2 output data at bytes 4 and 5. |
| 8 | Click OK to close the Items window. |
| 9 | Select File → Save to save your edits. |

Section 3.3

Adding a Modbus TCP Device to the Network

Overview

This section extends the sample Control Expert application, by describing how to:

- add an STB NIP 2212 Modbus TCP network interface module to your Control Expert application
- configure the STB NIP 2212 module
- configure a Modbus TCP connection linking the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module and the STB NIP 2212 network interface module

NOTE: The instructions in this chapter describe a single, specific device configuration example. Refer to the Control Expert help files for additional information about alternative configuration choices.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Setting Up Your Network | 141 |
| Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device | 143 |
| Configuring STB NIP 2212 Properties | 145 |
| Connecting to the Advantys STB Island | 152 |
| Configuring I/O Items | 156 |

Setting Up Your Network

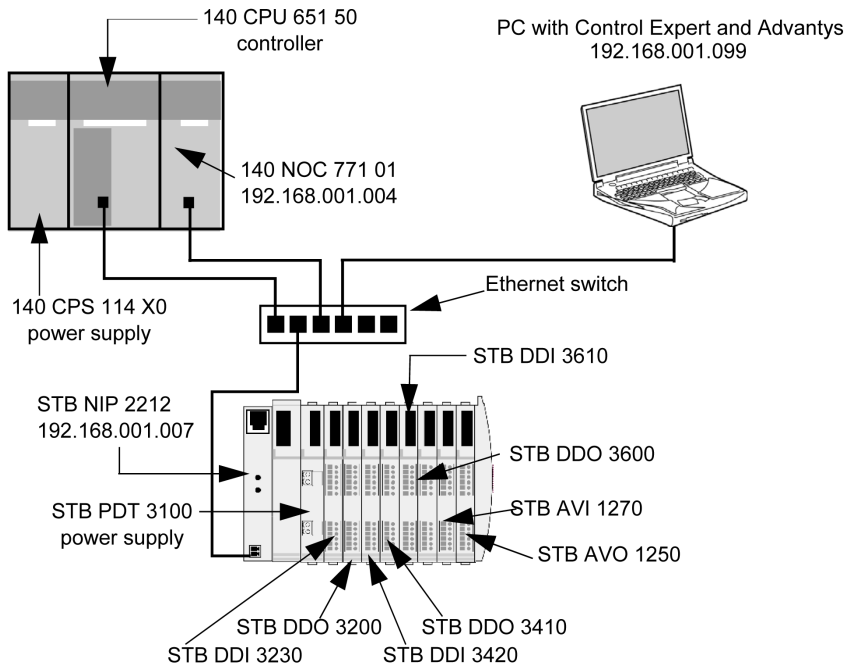
Overview

This sample network includes the following hardware and software:

- a controller rack with:
 - 140 CPS 114 X0, 115/230 VAC power supply
 - 140 CPU 651 50 controller
 - 140 NOC 771 01, Ethernet communication module
- a remote STB Advantys island with:
 - STB NIP 2212 Modbus TCP network interface module
 - STB PDT 3100 power distribution module
 - STB DDI 3230 2 pt digital input module
 - STB DDO 3200 2 pt digital output module
 - STB DDI 3420 4 pt digital input module
 - STB DDO 3410 4 pt digital output module
 - STB DDI 3610 6 pt digital input module
 - STB DDO 3600 6 pt digital output module
 - STB AVI 1270 2 pt analog input module
 - STB AVO 1250 2 pt analog output module
- a PC running both Unity Pro (version 5.0 or later) and Advantys configuration software (version 5.0 or later)
- an Ethernet managed switch that is connected to the both the controller and island by means of twisted pair Ethernet cable and RJ45 connectors.

Network Topology

The Ethernet network devices used in this configuration include the following:



To re-create this example:

- use the IP addresses for your own configuration's:
 - PC
 - 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module
 - STB NIP 2212 network interface module
- check wiring

NOTE: Control Expert software running in the PC is used to configure the CPU 651 50 controller. In this example, the PC is indirectly wired to the CPU's Ethernet port via the Ethernet switch. Alternatively, you could bypass the switch and directly wire the PC to either the CPU's Modbus or USB ports.

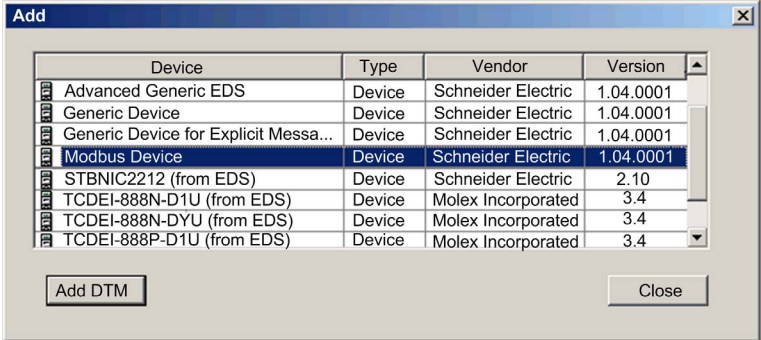
Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device

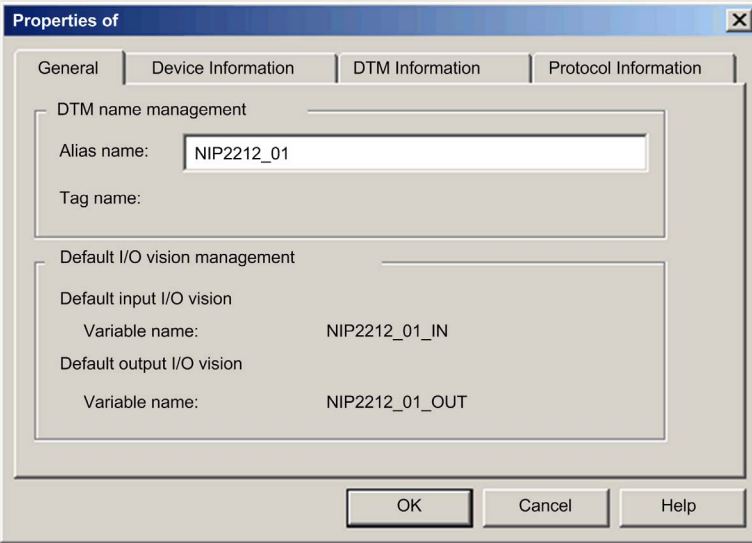
Overview

Use the generic Modbus DTM selection, in the **Add** dialog, to select and insert an STB NIP 2212 module to your project.

Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device

To add the STB NIP 2212 to your project, follow these steps:

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|--------|---------|----------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|---------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------|--------|--------------------|------|---------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----|---------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----|---------------------------|--------|--------------------|-----|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the Ethernet communication module node, and then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | In the menu, select Add... The following dialog opens: <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Vendor</th> <th>Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Advanced Generic EDS</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device for Explicit Messa...</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0e0e0;"> <td>Modbus Device</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STBNIP2212 (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>2.10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-top: 5px;"> Add DTM Close </div> </div> | Device | Type | Vendor | Version | Advanced Generic EDS | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | Generic Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | Generic Device for Explicit Messa... | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | Modbus Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | STBNIP2212 (from EDS) | Device | Schneider Electric | 2.10 | TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 |
| Device | Type | Vendor | Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Advanced Generic EDS | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Generic Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Generic Device for Explicit Messa... | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Modbus Device | Device | Schneider Electric | 1.04.0001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| STBNIP2212 (from EDS) | Device | Schneider Electric | 2.10 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS) | Device | Molex Incorporated | 3.4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | In the Add dialog, select the STBNIP2212 , then click Add DTM . The Properties window for the STB NIP 2212 network interface module opens. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>In the General page of the Properties window, edit the default Alias name to read NIP2212_01:</p>  <p>When you edit the Alias name, Control Expert applies it as the base name for both structure and variable names.</p> <p>NOTE: No additional editing needs to be performed in the pages of this window. Except for the Alias name field, parameters are read-only.</p> |
| 5 | <p>Click OK. Control Expert adds the new STB NIP 2212 network interface module to the DTM Browser, beneath the communication module.</p> |
| 6 | <p>Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> (see page 54) for instructions on how to save your configuration edits.</p> |

The next step is to configure the device you have just added to the project.

Configuring STB NIP 2212 Properties

Overview

Use the pages of the **Device Editor** to view and edit settings for a remote device. To edit the device settings, disconnect the DTM from the remote device (*see page 46*).

To display the DTM settings for a remote device, select the device name, which is found under the **Device List** node in the left pane of the **Device Editor**.

For the purposes of this example, which configures an STB NIP 2212 network interface module, select the node named **NIP2212 01**. The **Device Editor** displays the following pages:

- Properties
- Address Setting
- Request Setting

NOTE: Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* (*see page 54*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

Configuring the Properties Page

Use the **Properties** page to:

- add the remote device to, or remove it from, the configuration
- edit the base name for variables and data structures used by the remote device
- indicate how input and output items will be created and edited

The **Properties** page for an STB NIP 2212 network interface module looks like this:

The screenshot shows a configuration window with three tabs: "Properties", "Address Setting", and "Request Setting". The "Properties" tab is selected. The window is divided into several sections:

- Properties:** Contains a "Number" dropdown menu set to "004" and an "Active Configuration" dropdown menu set to "Enabled". Below these is a "Comment" text area with scrollbars.
- IO Structure Name:** Contains a "Default Name" button. Below it are two sections:
 - Input:** "Structure Name" is "T_NIP2212_01_IN" and "Variable Name" is "NIP2212_01_IN".
 - Output:** "Structure Name" is "T_NIP2212_01_OUT" and "Variable Name" is "NIP2212_01_OUT".
- Items Management:** Contains an "Import Mode" dropdown menu set to "Manual" and a "Reimport Items" button.

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

| Step | Action | |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Properties section of the page, edit the following: | |
| | Number | The relative position of the device in the list, from 0...127. For this example, accept the default of 004 . |
| | Active Configuration | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enabled: adds this device to the Control Expert project configuration ● Disabled: removes this device from the Control Expert project configuration Accept the default setting of Enabled . |
| 2 | In the IO Structure Name section of the page, edit the following: | |
| | Input area: | |
| | Structure Name | (Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case T_NIP2212_01_IN . |
| | Variable Name | Accept the auto-generated variable name (based on the alias name <i>(see page 143)</i>): NIP2212_01_IN . |
| | Output area: | |
| | Structure Name | (Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case T_NIP2212_01_OUT . |
| | Variable Name | Accept the auto-generated variable name (based on the alias name): NIP2212_01_OUT . |
| | Default Name button | Restores the default variable and structure names. For this example, custom names are used instead of default names. |
| 3 | In the Items Management section of the page, edit the following: | |
| | Import mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Automatic: I/O items are taken from the device DTM and updated if the items list in the device DTM changes. Items cannot be edited in the Device Editor. ● Manual: I/O items are manually added in the Device Editor. The I/O items list is not affected by changes to the device DTM. In this example, select Manual . |
| | Reimport Items | Imports the I/O items list from the device DTM, overwriting any manual I/O item edits. Enabled only when Import mode is set to Manual . |
| 4 | Click Apply to save your edits, and leave the window open for further edits. | |

Configuring the Address Setting Page

Use the **Address Setting** page to:

- configure the IP address for the remote device
- enable, or disable, DHCP client software for the remote device

When the DHCP client software is enabled in the remote device, it will obtain its IP address from the DHCP server in the Ethernet communication module. The **Address Setting** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a dialog box with three tabs: 'Properties', 'Address Setting', and 'Request Setting'. The 'Address Setting' tab is active. It contains two main sections: 'Change Address' and 'Address Server'. The 'Change Address' section has an 'IP Address' field with the value '192 . 168 . 1 . 7'. The 'Address Server' section includes a 'DHCP for this device' dropdown menu set to 'Enabled', an 'Identified by' dropdown menu set to 'Device Name', an 'Identifier' text field with 'NIP2212_01', a 'Subnet Mask' text field with '255 . 255 . 255 . 0', and a 'Gateway' text field with '0 . 0 . 0 . 0'. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>In the Address Settings page, edit the following:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>IP Address</td> <td> <p>By default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the first three octet values equal the first three octet values of the Ethernet communication module, and the fourth octet value equals this device Number setting—in this case, 004. <p>In this example, the IP address is 192.169.1.7.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>DHCP for this Device</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled activates the DHCP client in this device. The device obtains its IP address from the DHCP service provided by the Ethernet communication module and appears on the auto-generated DHCP client list (<i>see page 71</i>). Disabled (the default) de-activates the DHCP client in this device. <p>Select Enabled.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Identified by</td> <td> <p>If DHCP for this Device is Enabled, this indicates the device identifier type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MAC Address, or Device Name <p>Select Device Name.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Identifier</td> <td> <p>If DHCP for this Device is Enabled, the specific device MAC Address or Name value.</p> <p>Accept the default setting of NIP2212_01 (based on the Alias name).</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mask</td> <td> <p>The device subnet mask. The default = 255.255.255.0.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gateway</td> <td> <p>The gateway address used to reach this device. The default of 0.0.0.0 indicates this device is located on the same subnet as the Ethernet communication module.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p> </td> </tr> </table> | IP Address | <p>By default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the first three octet values equal the first three octet values of the Ethernet communication module, and the fourth octet value equals this device Number setting—in this case, 004. <p>In this example, the IP address is 192.169.1.7.</p> | DHCP for this Device | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled activates the DHCP client in this device. The device obtains its IP address from the DHCP service provided by the Ethernet communication module and appears on the auto-generated DHCP client list (<i>see page 71</i>). Disabled (the default) de-activates the DHCP client in this device. <p>Select Enabled.</p> | Identified by | <p>If DHCP for this Device is Enabled, this indicates the device identifier type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MAC Address, or Device Name <p>Select Device Name.</p> | Identifier | <p>If DHCP for this Device is Enabled, the specific device MAC Address or Name value.</p> <p>Accept the default setting of NIP2212_01 (based on the Alias name).</p> | Mask | <p>The device subnet mask. The default = 255.255.255.0.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p> | Gateway | <p>The gateway address used to reach this device. The default of 0.0.0.0 indicates this device is located on the same subnet as the Ethernet communication module.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p> |
| IP Address | <p>By default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the first three octet values equal the first three octet values of the Ethernet communication module, and the fourth octet value equals this device Number setting—in this case, 004. <p>In this example, the IP address is 192.169.1.7.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DHCP for this Device | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled activates the DHCP client in this device. The device obtains its IP address from the DHCP service provided by the Ethernet communication module and appears on the auto-generated DHCP client list (<i>see page 71</i>). Disabled (the default) de-activates the DHCP client in this device. <p>Select Enabled.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Identified by | <p>If DHCP for this Device is Enabled, this indicates the device identifier type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MAC Address, or Device Name <p>Select Device Name.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Identifier | <p>If DHCP for this Device is Enabled, the specific device MAC Address or Name value.</p> <p>Accept the default setting of NIP2212_01 (based on the Alias name).</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mask | <p>The device subnet mask. The default = 255.255.255.0.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Gateway | <p>The gateway address used to reach this device. The default of 0.0.0.0 indicates this device is located on the same subnet as the Ethernet communication module.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Click Apply to save your edits, and leave the window open for further edits. | | | | | | | | | | | | |

The next step is to configure the connection between the communication module and the remote device.

Configuring the Request Setting Page

Use the **Request Setting** page to add, configure, and remove Modbus requests for the remote device. Each request represents a separate link between the communication module and the remote device.

The **Request Setting** page for an STB NIP 2212 network interface module looks like this:

| Connection Bit | Unit ID | Health Time Out | Repetitive Rate | RD Address | RD Length | Last Value | WR Address | WR Length |
|----------------|---------|-----------------|-----------------|------------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| 0 | 255 | 1500 | 60 | 5392 | 18 | Hold Value | 1 | 5 |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

The **Add Request** function is enabled only when **Import Mode** is set to **Manual**.

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

| Step | Action |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Request Settings page, edit the following: |
| Connection Bit | (Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool—starting at 0—based on the connection type, in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Modbus TCP connections 2. Local Slave connections 3. EtherNet/IP connections <p>NOTE: When this Modbus TCP connection is created, the offset values for the previously created local slave and EtherNet/IP connections are incremented by 1: the local slave connection bit is set to 1, and the EtherNet/IP connection bit value is set to 2.</p> |
| Unit ID | The number of the device, or module, that is the target of the connection. A value of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 255 (the default) used to access the Ethernet communication module itself ● 0...254 identifies the device number of the target device, behind a Modbus TCP to Modbus gateway <p>NOTE: When accessing data in the Ethernet communication module itself, use 255. When accessing data in the application running in the PLC, use a value from 0 to 254 (a value of 1 is recommended).</p> <p>Because the remote device itself is the request target, accept the default value of 255.</p> |
| Health Timeout | The maximum allowed period, in milliseconds, between device responses, from 0...120000 ms in increments of 5 ms. When this setting is exceeded, the health timeout bit is set to 1. The default = 1500 ms. Accept the default value of 1500 . |
| Repetitive Rate | The data scan rate, from 0...60000 ms, in intervals of 5 ms. The default = 60 ms. Accept the default value of 60 . |
| RD Address | Address in the remote device of the input data image. The input data image begins at word 45392. Because there is an offset of 40000 in the Quantum platform, type in a value of 5392 . |
| RD Length | The number of words in the remote device, from 0...125, that the communication module will read. Because the Modbus device will be configured for 18 words of input items, type in a value of 18 . |
| Last Value | The behavior of inputs in the application in the event communication is lost: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hold Value (the default) ● Set To Zero <p>Accept the default.</p> |
| WR Address | Address in the remote device of the output data image. The output data image begins at word 40001. Because there is an offset of 40000 in the Quantum platform, type in a value of 1 . |
| WR Length | The number of words in the remote device, from 0...120, to which the communication module will write. Because the Modbus device will be configured for 5 words of output items, type in a value of 5 . |
| 2 | Click OK to save your edits, and close the window. |

The next step is to connect the Control Expert project to the Advantys Island.

Connecting to the Advantys STB Island

Overview

In this example, you will use the Advantys configuration software running on your PC to:

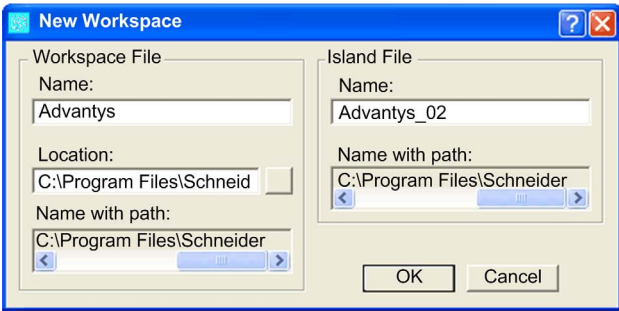
- connect the Advantys configuration software to the STB NIP 2212 and the 8 I/O modules that comprise the Advantys STB island
- upload Advantys STB island configuration to the Advantys configuration software in your PC
- display a fieldbus image for the Advantys STB island showing the relative location of:
 - input data
 - output data

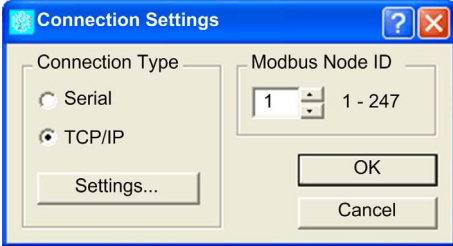
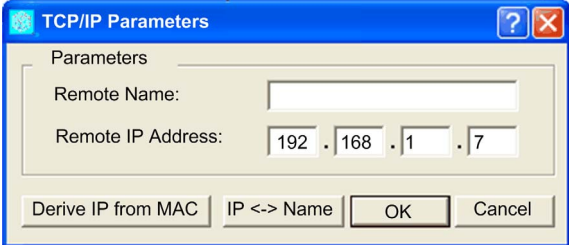
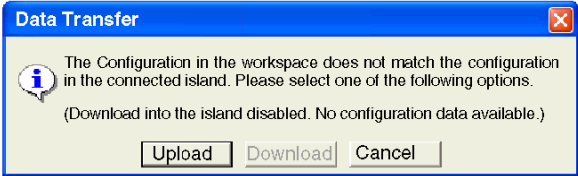
Using the data presented in the fieldbus image, you can use Control Expert to create input and output items that map to specific input, output, and output echo data.

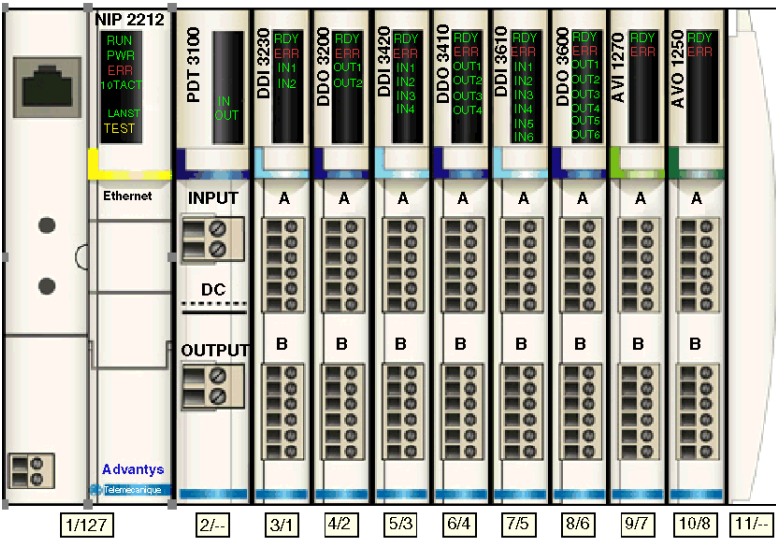
NOTE: Before proceeding with the following instructions, confirm that you have auto-configured the Advantys STB island by pressing the **RST** button on the front of the STB NIP 2212 module.

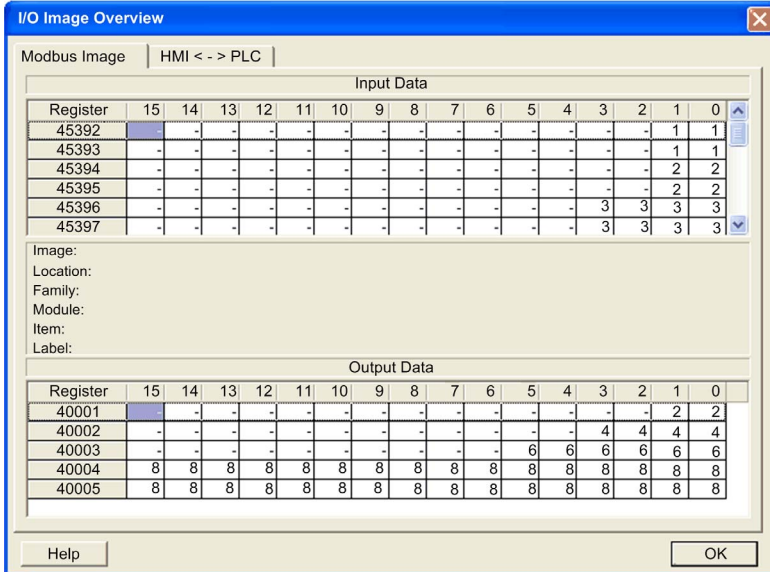
Making the Connection

To connect to the STB NIP 2212 and I/O modules using the Advantys configuration software:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Startup the Advantys configuration software on your PC. A dialog opens displaying available project types. |
| 2 | Select STB . |
| 3 | Select File → New Workspace . The New Workspace window opens (below). |
| 4 | <p>For this example, type in the following field values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● for the field Workspace File type in Advantys ● for the field Island File type in Advantys_02 |
| |  |
| 5 | Click OK . The Advantys configuration software displays an empty DIN rail in the center of the screen. |

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Select Online → Connection Settings . The Connection Settings window opens (below). |
| 7 | <p>In the Connection Settings window, accept the Modbus Node ID default setting of 1, select TCP/IP, and click the Settings... button:</p>  <p>The TCP/IP Parameters dialog opens (below).</p> |
| 8 | <p>In the Remote IP Address field, type in the IP address for the STB NIP 2212, in this example: 192.168.1.7.</p>  |
| 9 | Click OK to close the TCP/IP Parameters dialog, and click OK again to close the Connection Settings dialog. |
| 10 | <p>Select Online → Connect. The Data Transfer dialog opens (below):</p>  |

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 11 | <p>Select Upload in the Data Transfer dialog. The island workspace is populated with island data and shows the STB NIP 2212 and the island modules (below):</p>  <p>Note: A box appears beneath each module containing one or two integers—for example 3/1. These integers serve the following purpose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The left-side integer (3 in this example) identifies the module's physical position—left to right—among the modules in the rack. • The right-side integer (1 in this example) identifies the module's relative position—left to right—among only data producing/receiving modules. If the module is not a data producing/receiving module (e.g. a power supply, or end of segment module) no right-side integer appears. |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | <p>Select Island → I/O Image Overview. The I/O Image window opens to the Fieldbus Image page:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a window titled "I/O Image Overview" with a blue header and a close button. Below the header are tabs for "Modbus Image" and "HMI <-> PLC". The main content area is divided into two sections: "Input Data" and "Output Data".</p> <p>Input Data Table:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Register</th> <th>15</th> <th>14</th> <th>13</th> <th>12</th> <th>11</th> <th>10</th> <th>9</th> <th>8</th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>45392</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>45393</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>45394</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>45395</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>45396</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>45397</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Below the Input Data table are fields for "Image:", "Location:", "Family:", "Module:", "Item:", and "Label:".</p> <p>Output Data Table:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Register</th> <th>15</th> <th>14</th> <th>13</th> <th>12</th> <th>11</th> <th>10</th> <th>9</th> <th>8</th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>40001</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>40002</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>4</td> <td>4</td> <td>4</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>40003</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>40004</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>40005</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>At the bottom of the window are "Help" and "OK" buttons.</p> <p>Each table cell contains an integer that identifies the relative rack position of a data producing/receiving module with input or output data in that cell. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the STB DDI 3230 input module is the first data producing or receiving module in the rack; its data and status information is indicated by the integer 1 in bits 0...1 of registers 45392 and 45393 in the Input Data table the STB DDO 3600 output module is the sixth data producing module in the rack; its output echo and status data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 0 - 5 of register 45402 and in bits 0 - 5 of register 45403 in the Input Data table; its output data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 0 - 5 of register 40003 in the Output Data table <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select a cell in either the Input Data or Output Data tables to display—in the middle of the page—a description of the cell data and its source module. Convert the size of the Input Data table and the Output Data table from words to bytes (i.e. divide by 2), then use that information when setting the RD Length (inputs) and WR Length (outputs) parameters in the Request Setting page for the remote Modbus TCP device. | Register | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 45392 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 1 | 1 | 45393 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 1 | 1 | 45394 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 2 | 2 | 45395 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 2 | 2 | 45396 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 45397 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | Register | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 40001 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 2 | 2 | 40002 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 40003 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 40004 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 40005 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 |
| Register | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 45392 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 1 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 45393 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 1 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 45394 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 2 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 45395 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 2 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 45396 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 45397 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Register | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 40001 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 2 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 40002 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 40003 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 40004 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 40005 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Configuring I/O Items

Overview

The next task in this example is to add I/O items to the configuration of the STB NIP 2212 and its 8 I/O modules. To accomplish this:

- Use the **Modbus Image** page of the Advantys configuration software to identify the relative position of each I/O module's inputs and outputs.
- Use the Control Expert **Device Editor** to create input and output items, defining each item's:
 - name
 - data type

NOTE: You can manually configure I/O items only when **Input Mode** is set to **Manual**.

I/O Item Types and Sizes

Because the Modbus TCP network interface module transmits data in the form of 16-bit words, in this example you will create every input and output item using the **WORD** data type. This remains true even if the item contains only a few bits of data. Bit-packing is not permitted when, as in this example, the remote device is a Modbus TCP network interface module.

NOTE: When you add more devices to your network, it may be necessary to increase the size and index location of both inputs and outputs for your Control Expert project (*see page 36*).

In this example, the following number and type of items need to be created:

- 18 input words
- 5 output words

Mapping Input and Output Items

Use the **Fieldbus Image** page of the **I/O Image Overview** window in the Advantys configuration software to identify the number and type of I/O items you need to create, as follows:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Advantys configuration software, select Island → I/O Image Overview . The I/O Image window opens to the Modbus Image page. |
| 2 | Select the cell 0 of the first word (45392) in the Input Data table to display—in the middle of the page—a description of the cell data and its source module. |
| 3 | Make a note of the register number and item information for that word. |
| 4 | Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each word. |

NOTE: The Modbus Image presents input and output data in the form of 16-bit words (starting with word 1). You need to maintain this data format as you create input and output items in Control Expert.

NOTE: When you create items, align items of data type **WORD** and **DWORD** on a 16-bit boundary.

This process yields the following tables of input and output data:

Input Data (Read):

| Advantys Modbus Image | | Control Expert Items | | STB Module | Description |
|-----------------------|--------|----------------------|----------|------------|-------------------|
| Register | Bit(s) | Bytes | Bit(s) | | |
| 45392 | 0-1 | 0 | 0-1 | DDI 3230 | input data |
| | | 1 | not used | | |
| 45393 | 0-1 | 2 | 0-1 | DDI 3230 | input status |
| | | 3 | not used | | |
| 45394 | 0-1 | 4 | 0-1 | DDO 3200 | output data echo |
| | | 5 | not used | | |
| 45395 | 0-1 | 6 | 0-1 | DDO 3200 | output status |
| | | 7 | not used | | |
| 45396 | 0-3 | 8 | 0-3 | DDI 3420 | input data |
| | | 9 | not used | | |
| 45397 | 0-3 | 10 | 0-3 | DDI 3420 | input status |
| | | 11 | not used | | |
| 45398 | 0-3 | 12 | 0-3 | DDO 3410 | output data echo |
| | | 13 | not used | | |
| 45399 | 0-3 | 14 | 0-3 | DDO 3410 | output status |
| | | 15 | not used | | |
| 45400 | 0-5 | 16 | 0-5 | DDI 3610 | input data |
| | | 17 | not used | | |
| 45401 | 0-5 | 18 | 0-5 | DDI 3610 | input status |
| | | 19 | not used | | |
| 45402 | 0-5 | 20 | 0-5 | DDO 3600 | output data echo |
| | | 21 | not used | | |
| 45403 | 0-5 | 22 | 0-5 | DDO 3600 | output status |
| | | 23 | not used | | |
| 45404 | 0-15 | 24 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input data ch 1 |
| | | 25 | 0-7 | | |
| 45405 | 0-7 | 26 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input status ch 1 |
| | | 27 | not used | | |
| 45406 | 0-15 | 28 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input data ch 2 |
| | | 29 | 0-7 | | |
| 45407 | 0-7 | 30 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | input status ch 2 |
| | | 31 | not used | | |

| Advantys Modbus Image | | Control Expert Items | | STB Module | Description |
|-----------------------|--------|----------------------|----------|------------|--------------------|
| Register | Bit(s) | Bytes | Bit(s) | | |
| 45408 | 0-7 | 32 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | output status ch 1 |
| | | 33 | not used | | |
| 45409 | 0-7 | 34 | 0-7 | AVI 1270 | output status ch 2 |
| | | 35 | not used | | |

Output Data (Write):

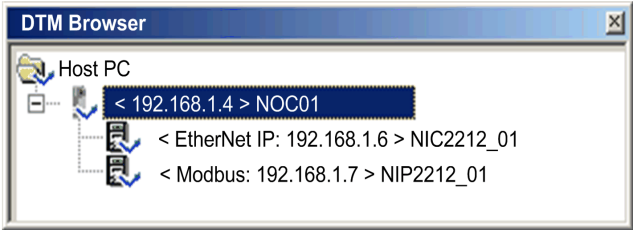
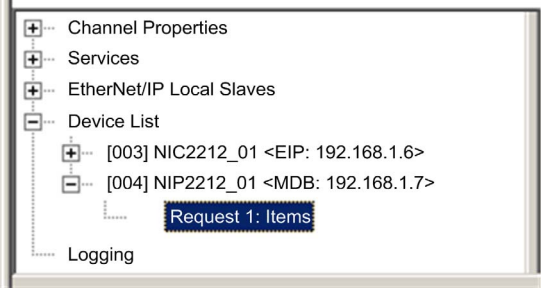
| Advantys Modbus Image | | Control Expert Items | | STB Module | Description |
|-----------------------|--------|----------------------|----------|------------|------------------|
| Register | Bit(s) | Byte | Bit(s) | | |
| 40001 | 0-1 | 0 | 0-1 | DDO 3200 | output data |
| | | 1 | not used | | |
| 40002 | 0-3 | 2 | 0-3 | DDO 3410 | output data |
| | | 3 | not used | | |
| 40003 | 0-5 | 4 | 0-5 | DDO 3600 | output data |
| | | 5 | not used | | |
| 40004 | 0-15 | 6 | 0-7 | AVO 1250 | output data ch 1 |
| | | 7 | 0-7 | | |
| 40005 | 0-15 | 8 | 0-7 | AVO 1250 | output data ch 2 |
| | | 9 | 0-7 | | |

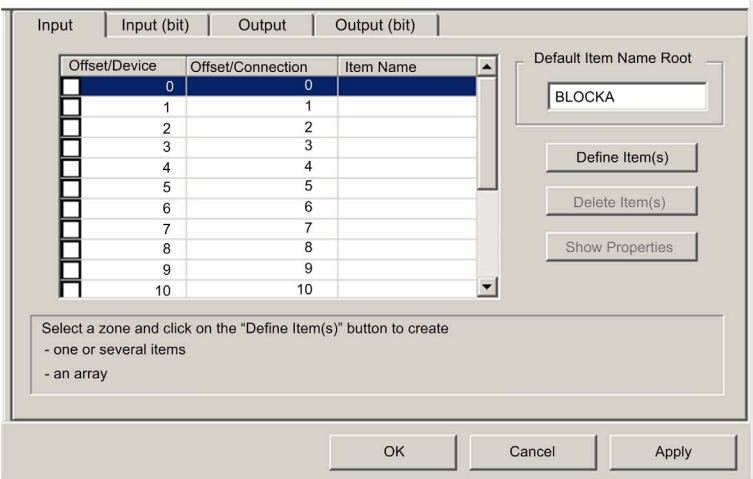
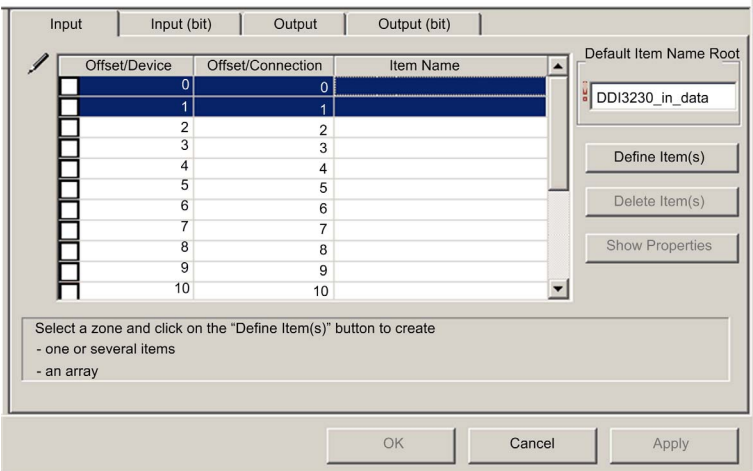
This example shows you how to create 18 words of inputs and 5 words of outputs. This example creates items in the following sequence:

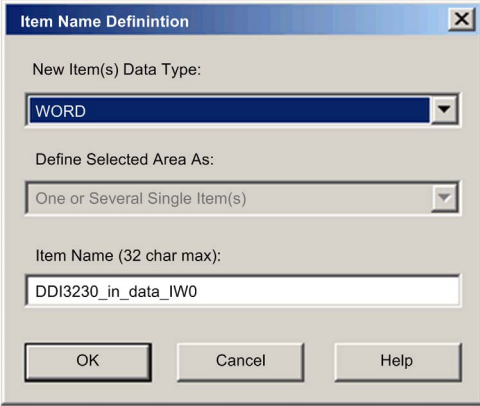
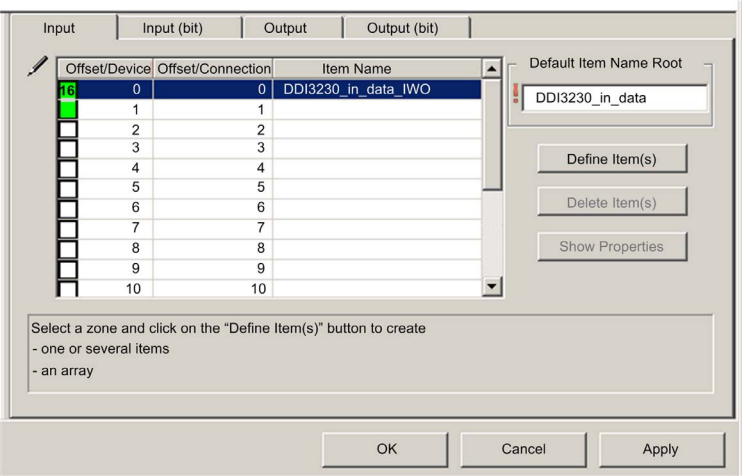
- input word items
- output word items

Creating Input Word Items

To create input items for the STB NIP 2212 example, beginning with an input word for the DDI 3230 input module:

| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>In the DTM Browser, select the communication module:</p>  |
| 2 | <p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • in the main menu, select Edit → Open, or • click the right mouse button, then select Open in the pop-up menu. <p>The Device Editor opens, displaying the DTM for the communication module.</p> |
| 3 | <p>In the left pane of the Device Editor, navigate to and select the Items node for the STB NIP 2212 network interface:</p>  |

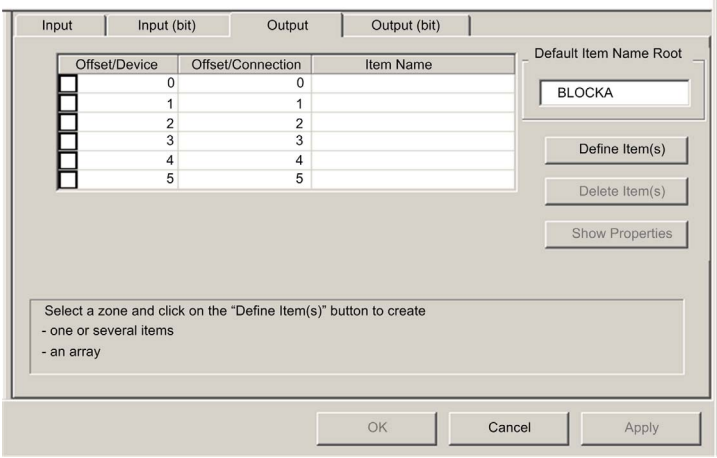
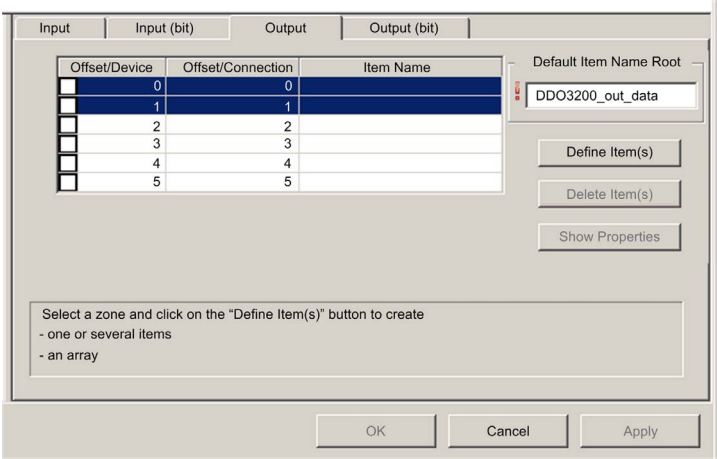
| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Select the Input tab to open that page:</p>  <p>NOTE: In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the items you create will be a 16-bit words, each item consists of 2 rows.</p> |
| 5 | <p>In the Default Item Name Root input box type: DDI3230_in_data.</p> |
| 6 | <p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first two rows: 0 and 1:</p>  |

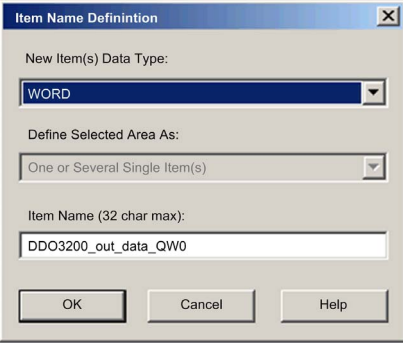
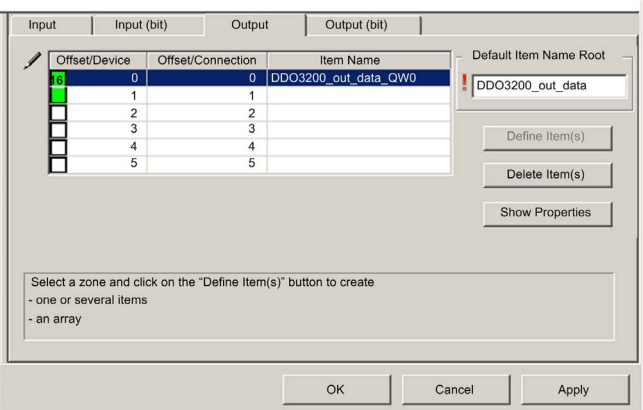
| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------------|---------------------|--------------|-----------|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---------------------|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------|----|----|----|--|
| 7 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  <p>NOTE: The Define Item(s) button is enabled only when Input Mode is set to Manual.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | <p>Select WORD as the New Item(s) Data Type, then click OK. A new item is created:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Input</th> <th>Input (bit)</th> <th>Output</th> <th>Output (bit)</th> <th>Item Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>DDI3230_in_data_IW0</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>4</td> <td>4</td> <td>4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>5</td> <td>5</td> <td>5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>7</td> <td>7</td> <td>7</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>9</td> <td>9</td> <td>9</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>10</td> <td>10</td> <td>10</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - one or several items - an array | Input | Input (bit) | Output | Output (bit) | Item Name | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 | 0 | DDI3230_in_data_IW0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 | 1 | 1 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 2 | 2 | 2 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 3 | 3 | 3 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 4 | 4 | 4 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 | 5 | 5 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 | 6 | 6 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 | 7 | 7 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 8 | 8 | 8 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 9 | 9 | 9 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10 | 10 | 10 | |
| Input | Input (bit) | Output | Output (bit) | Item Name | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 | 0 | DDI3230_in_data_IW0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 | 1 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2 | 2 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3 | 3 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4 | 4 | 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 | 5 | 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 | 6 | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 | 7 | 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 8 | 8 | 8 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 9 | 9 | 9 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 10 | 10 | 10 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | <p>Click Apply to save the new items, and leave the page open.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10 | <p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each new word item you need to create. In this example, that includes the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rows 2-3: Default Items Name Root: DDI3230_in_st ● Rows 4-5: Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_echo ● Rows 6-7: Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_st ● Rows 8-9: Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_data ● Rows 10-11: Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_st ● Rows 12-13: Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_echo ● Rows 14-15: Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_st ● Rows 16-17: Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_data ● Rows 18-19: Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_st ● Rows 20-21: Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_echo ● Rows 22-23: Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_st ● Rows 24-25: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_data ● Rows 26-27: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_st ● Rows 28-29: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_data ● Rows 30-31: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_st ● Rows 32-33: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH1_out_st ● Rows 34-35: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH2_out_st |
| 11 | The next task is to create output words. |

Creating Output Word Items

To create output items for the STB NIP 2212, example, beginning with an output data word for the DDO 3200 output module:

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Click the Output tab to open the following page:</p>  <p>NOTE: In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the items you create will be a 16-bit words, each item consists of 2 rows.</p> |
| 2 | <p>In the Default Item Name Root input box type: DDO3200_out_data.</p> |
| 3 | <p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first 2 rows, 0 and 1:</p>  |

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Click the Define Item(s) button. The Item Name Definition dialog opens:</p>  <p>NOTE: The Define Item(s) button is enabled only when Input Mode is set to Manual.</p> |
| 5 | <p>Select WORD as the New Item(s) Data Type, then click OK. A new item is created:</p>  |
| 6 | Click Apply to save the new item and leave the page open. |
| 7 | <p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each new word item you need to create. In this example, that includes the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rows 2-3, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_data ● Rows 4-5: Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_data ● Rows 6-7: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH1_out_data ● Rows 8-9: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH2_out_data |
| 8 | Click OK to close the Items window. |
| 9 | Select File → Save to save your edits. |

The next task is to update the Control Expert application (*see page 166*).

Chapter 4

Working With Derived Data Types

Overview

This chapter describes how to complete your project by creating, updating, and viewing derived data type (DDT) variables in Control Expert.

What Is in This Chapter?

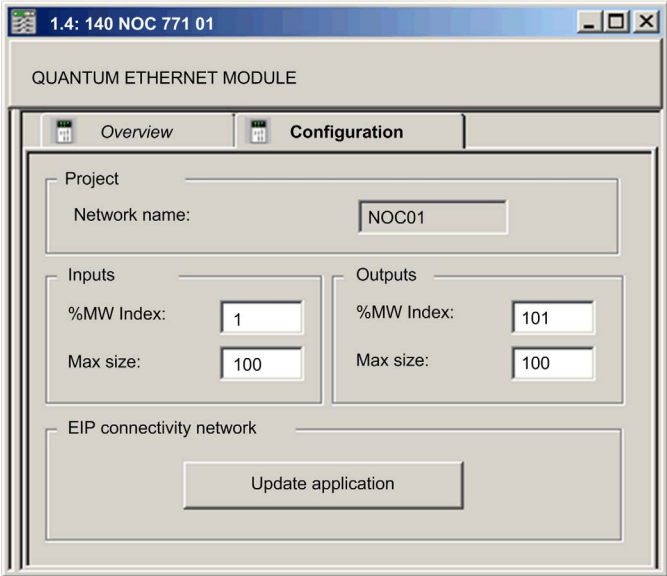
This chapter contains the following topics:

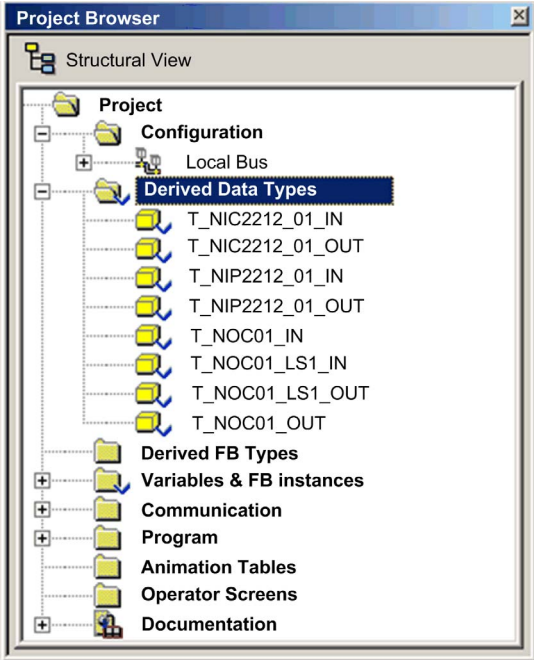
| Topic | Page |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Creating and Updating Derived Data Types | 166 |
| Working with Derived Data Type Variables | 168 |
| Effect of Activating and De-activating Devices on I/O %MW Memory Addresses | 177 |

Creating and Updating Derived Data Types

Creating or Updating Derived Data Types

After you have completed your edits in the **Device Editor**, the next step is to let Control Expert create the necessary program objects in the form of derived data types (DDTs) and variables that will support your network design. To do this, follow these steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Project Browser , navigate to and select the communication module. |
| 2 | <p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● click the right mouse button, and select Open in the pop-up menu, or ● in the Edit menu, select Open. <p>The Configuration page of the Ethernet communication module opens, below:</p>  |
| 3 | <p>Click the Update application button.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Every time you use the Device Editor to make changes to your Control Expert project, return to this screen and click the Update application button to save your edits. ● Control Expert refreshes the collection of DDTs and variables by adding, editing, or deleting previously generated DDTs and variables each time you do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ click on the Update application button, above ○ select either Build → Build Changes or Build → Rebuild All Project |

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Click OK. The Project Browser displays the new or edited derived data types, below:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Project Browser window with the following structure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Project<ul style="list-style-type: none">Configuration<ul style="list-style-type: none">Local BusDerived Data Types (highlighted)<ul style="list-style-type: none">T_NIC2212_01_INT_NIC2212_01_OUTT_NIP2212_01_INT_NIP2212_01_OUTT_NOC01_INT_NOC01_LS1_INT_NOC01_LS1_OUTT_NOC01_OUTDerived FB TypesVariables & FB instancesCommunicationProgramAnimation TablesOperator ScreensDocumentation |

Working with Derived Data Type Variables

Derived Data Type Variables

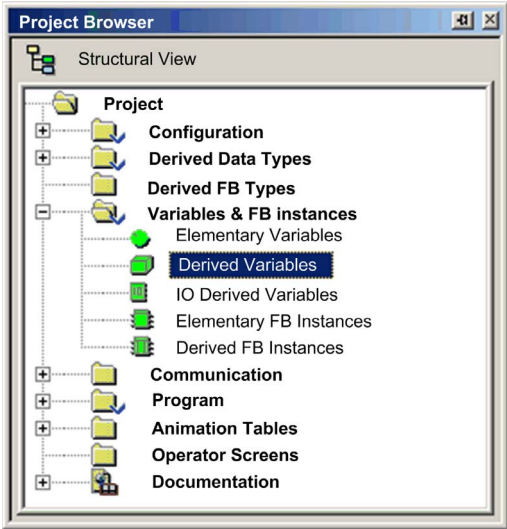
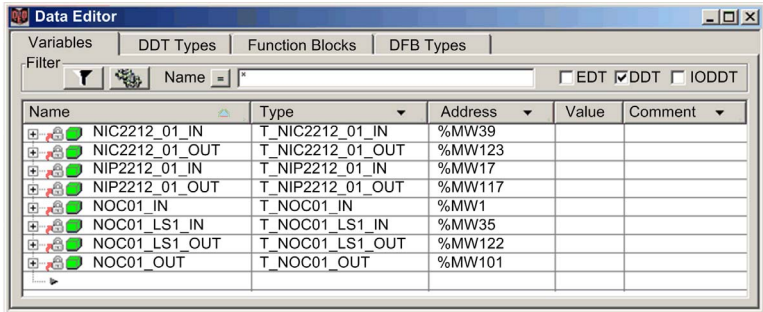
When you click on the **Update application** button, Control Expert creates a collection of derived data types and variables. These are used by Control Expert to support communication and data transfer between the PLC and the various local slaves, remote devices, and their I/O items. You can access these derived data types and variables in the Control Expert **Data Editor** and add them to a user-defined **Animation Table**, where you can monitor read-only variables and edit read-write variables.

Use these data types and variables to:

- view the status of connections from the communication module to remote EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP devices, where:
 - the status of connections is displayed in the form of a HEALTH_BITS array consisting of 32 bytes
 - each connection is represented by a single bit in the array
 - a bit value of 1 indicates the connection is healthy
 - a bit value of 0 indicates the connection is lost, or the communication module can no longer communicate with the remote device
- toggle a connection ON (1) or OFF (0) by writing to a selected bit in a 32 byte CONTROL_BITS array
NOTE: Distinguish between toggling a bit in the CONTROL_BITS array on or off, and enabling or disabling a remote device.
- monitor the value of local slave and remote device input and output items you created in the Control Expert **Device Editor**

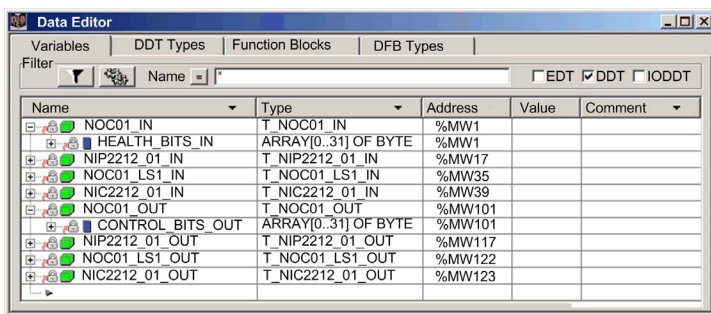
Identifying Derived Variables in the Data Editor

To view your Control Expert application's derived data type variables:

| Step | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------|---------|-------|---------|---------------|-----------------|-------|--|--|----------------|------------------|--------|--|--|---------------|-----------------|-------|--|--|----------------|------------------|--------|--|--|----------|------------|------|--|--|--------------|----------------|-------|--|--|---------------|-----------------|--------|--|--|-----------|-------------|--------|--|--|
| 1 | <p>In the Project Browser, navigate to and double-click the left mouse button on Variables & FB instances → Derived Variables:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Project Browser window with a tree view. The 'Variables & FB instances' folder is expanded, and the 'Derived Variables' sub-item is selected and highlighted with a blue box. Other items in the tree include Configuration, Derived Data Types, Derived FB Types, Elementary Variables, IO Derived Variables, Elementary FB Instances, Derived FB Instances, Communication, Program, Animation Tables, Operator Screens, and Documentation.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | <p>The Data Editor opens, displaying the Variables page:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Data Editor window with the 'Variables' tab selected. A table lists variables with columns for Name, Type, Address, Value, and Comment. The table contains several entries, some with red arrows and lock icons in the Name column.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Name</th><th>Type</th><th>Address</th><th>Value</th><th>Comment</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>NIC2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_IN</td><td>%MW39</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td>%MW123</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>NIP2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_IN</td><td>%MW17</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td>%MW117</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>NOC01_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_IN</td><td>%MW1</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td>%MW35</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td>%MW122</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>NOC01_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_OUT</td><td>%MW101</td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• A check mark appears in the DDT checkbox. (If not, select the DDT checkbox to display these variables.)• The red arrow and lock icons indicate the variable name was auto-generated by Control Expert based on the configuration of the local slave or remote device and cannot be edited. | Name | Type | Address | Value | Comment | NIC2212_01_IN | T_NIC2212_01_IN | %MW39 | | | NIC2212_01_OUT | T_NIC2212_01_OUT | %MW123 | | | NIP2212_01_IN | T_NIP2212_01_IN | %MW17 | | | NIP2212_01_OUT | T_NIP2212_01_OUT | %MW117 | | | NOC01_IN | T_NOC01_IN | %MW1 | | | NOC01_LS1_IN | T_NOC01_LS1_IN | %MW35 | | | NOC01_LS1_OUT | T_NOC01_LS1_OUT | %MW122 | | | NOC01_OUT | T_NOC01_OUT | %MW101 | | |
| Name | Type | Address | Value | Comment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIC2212_01_IN | T_NIC2212_01_IN | %MW39 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIC2212_01_OUT | T_NIC2212_01_OUT | %MW123 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIP2212_01_IN | T_NIP2212_01_IN | %MW17 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIP2212_01_OUT | T_NIP2212_01_OUT | %MW117 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN | T_NOC01_IN | %MW1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_LS1_IN | T_NOC01_LS1_IN | %MW35 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_LS1_OUT | T_NOC01_LS1_OUT | %MW122 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_OUT | T_NOC01_OUT | %MW101 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Displaying the Order of Input and Output Items in PLC Memory

The **Data Editor** displays the address of each input and output variable. Click once on the **Address** column header to sort input and output addresses in ascending order. When you open the first input and output variables, you can see both the connection health bits and the connection control bits:



Note the order of inputs and outputs in the above example. Recall that the user defines the size and location of inputs and outputs (*see Modicon M340, BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*). However, within the reserved area for both inputs and outputs, Control Expert assigns addresses to variables in the following order:

| Inputs | Order | Outputs |
|------------------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| Health bits ¹ | 1 | Control bits ¹ |
| Modbus TCP input variables ² | 2 | Modbus TCP output variables ² |
| Local Slave input variables ³ | 3 | Local Slave output variables ³ |
| EtherNet/IP input variables ² | 4 | EtherNet/IP output variables ² |

1. Health and control bits are sub-ordered as follows:
 - i. by device type: a. Modbus TCP; b. local slave; c. EtherNet/IP
 - ii. within each device type:
 - a. by device or local slave number
 - b. within a device: by connection number
2. Device variables are sub-ordered as follows:
 - i. by device number
 - ii. within a device: by connection number
 - iii. within a connection: by item offset
3. Local slave variables are sub-ordered as follows:
 - i. by local slave number
 - ii. within each local slave: by item offset

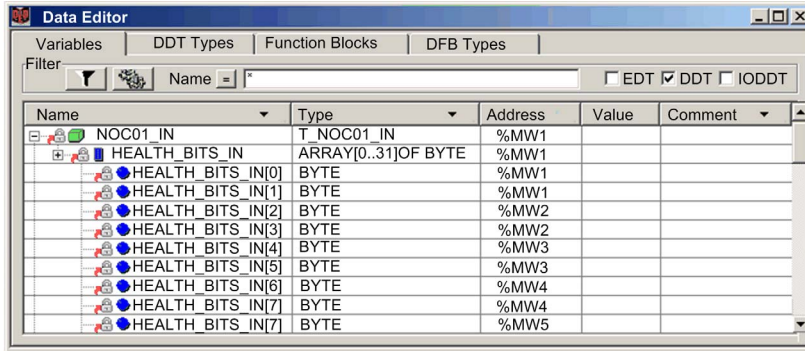
NOTE: When a device is added to or removed from the project, or when the active status of an existing device or a local slave changes, the specific location of inputs and outputs in PLC memory also changes.

Identifying the Connection Health Bits

The Ethernet communication module can support up to 128 connections to remote devices. The health of each connection is represented in a single bit value. A health bit value of:

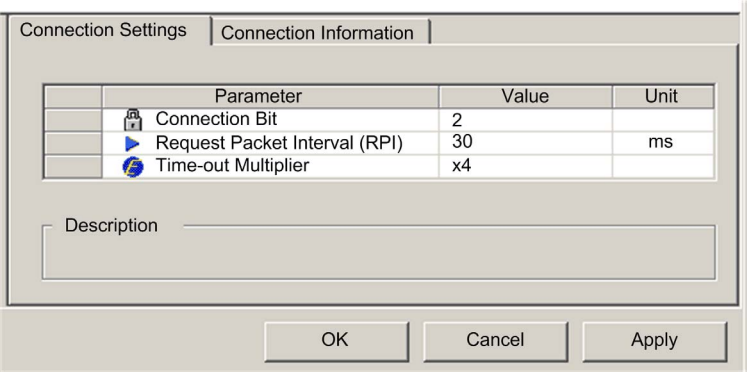
- 1 indicates the connection is active
- 0 indicates the connection is inactive

The health bits are contained in a 32-byte array in the **Variables** page of the **Data Editor**. To display offline this byte array, first sort the variables in ascending order of address, then open the first input variable as shown below:



To determine which health bit is mapped to a specific remote device connection, in the **Device Editor** for the Ethernet communications

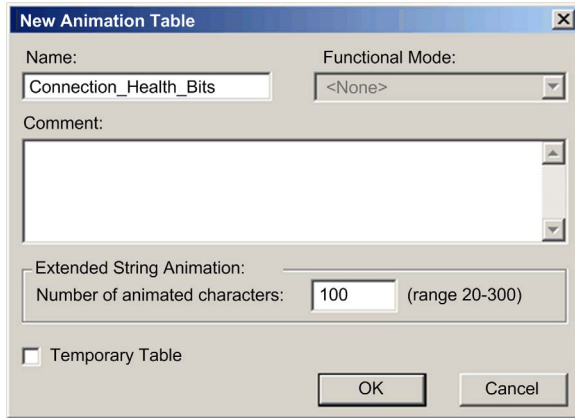

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|---|-----|------|----|------|----|------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1 | In the Device Editor for the Ethernet communication module, under the Device List node, navigate to and select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • for Modbus TCP devices: the main device node • for EtherNet/IP devices: a connection node | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | For a Modbus TCP device, open the Request Setting page and look for the Connection Bit number: <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connection Bit</th> <th>Unit ID</th> <th>Health Time Out</th> <th>Repetitive Rate</th> <th>RD Address</th> <th>RD Length</th> <th>Last Value</th> <th>WR Address</th> <th>WR Length</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>255</td> <td>1500</td> <td>60</td> <td>5392</td> <td>18</td> <td>Hold Value</td> <td>1</td> <td>5</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>In the above example (which displays the left portion of a truncated Request Setting page), the Connection Bit value of 0 maps to the first bit in the first byte of the HEALTH_BITS_IN array, which can be represented as HEALTH_BITS_IN[0].0.</p> | Connection Bit | Unit ID | Health Time Out | Repetitive Rate | RD Address | RD Length | Last Value | WR Address | WR Length | 0 | 255 | 1500 | 60 | 5392 | 18 | Hold Value | 1 | 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Connection Bit | Unit ID | Health Time Out | Repetitive Rate | RD Address | RD Length | Last Value | WR Address | WR Length | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 255 | 1500 | 60 | 5392 | 18 | Hold Value | 1 | 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

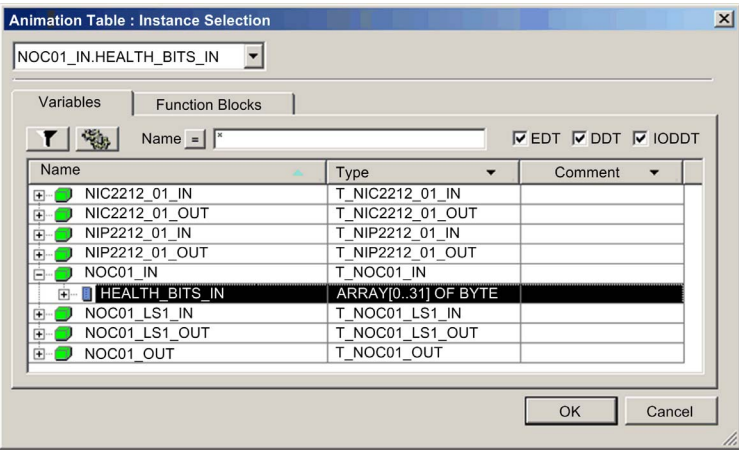
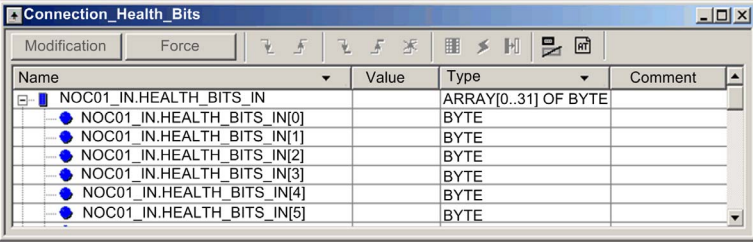
| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>For an EtherNet/IP device, open the Connection Settings page and look for the Connection Bit number:</p>  <p>In the above example, the Connection Bit value of 2 maps to the third bit in the first byte of the HEALTH_BITS_IN array, which can be represented as <code>HEALTH_BITS_IN[0].2</code>.</p> |
| 4 | <p>For a local slave, open the local slave configuration page (<i>see page 85</i>) and look for the Connection Bit number:</p> |

Monitoring Connection Health Bits in an Animation Table

Use an animation table to monitor the status of connection health bits and other variables. To add health bits to an animation table, follow these steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Project Browser , select the Animation Tables node and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 2 | Select New Animation Table . |

| Step | Action | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>In the New Animation Table dialog, type in values for the following fields:</p> <table border="1"><tr><td>Name</td><td>Type in a name for the new animation table. In this example, type in Connection_Health_Bits.</td></tr><tr><td>Number of animated characters</td><td>Accept the default value of 100.</td></tr></table> <p>The completed dialog looks like this:</p>  | Name | Type in a name for the new animation table. In this example, type in Connection_Health_Bits . | Number of animated characters | Accept the default value of 100 . |
| Name | Type in a name for the new animation table. In this example, type in Connection_Health_Bits . | | | | |
| Number of animated characters | Accept the default value of 100 . | | | | |
| 4 | Click OK . The dialog closes and the new Connection_Health_Bits animation table opens. | | | | |
| 5 | Double-click on the first empty row in the Name column, then click the ellipsis button  . The Instance Selection dialog opens. | | | | |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------|---------|---------------|-------------------------|--|----------------------|------------------|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|--|----------------------------|------------------|------|----------|----------------------------|--|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------|----------------|--|----------------------------|-----------------|------|-----------|----------------------------|--|------|--|
| 6 | <p>In the Instance Selection dialog, navigate to and select the entire <code>HEALTH_BITS_IN</code> array:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Animation Table : Instance Selection' dialog. The 'Name' field is set to 'NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN'. The 'Variables' tab is selected, and a list of variables is displayed. The variable 'HEALTH_BITS_IN' is highlighted, showing its type as 'ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE'.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>NIC2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIP2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>HEALTH_BITS_IN</td><td>ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> | Name | Type | Comment | NIC2212_01_IN | T_NIC2212_01_IN | | NIC2212_01_OUT | T_NIC2212_01_OUT | | NIP2212_01_IN | T_NIP2212_01_IN | | NIP2212_01_OUT | T_NIP2212_01_OUT | | NOC01_IN | T_NOC01_IN | | HEALTH_BITS_IN | ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE | | NOC01_LS1_IN | T_NOC01_LS1_IN | | NOC01_LS1_OUT | T_NOC01_LS1_OUT | | NOC01_OUT | T_NOC01_OUT | | | |
| Name | Type | Comment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIC2212_01_IN | T_NIC2212_01_IN | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIC2212_01_OUT | T_NIC2212_01_OUT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIP2212_01_IN | T_NIP2212_01_IN | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NIP2212_01_OUT | T_NIP2212_01_OUT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN | T_NOC01_IN | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| HEALTH_BITS_IN | ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_LS1_IN | T_NOC01_LS1_IN | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_LS1_OUT | T_NOC01_LS1_OUT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_OUT | T_NOC01_OUT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | <p>Click OK to add the array to the Connection_Health_Bits animation table:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Connection_Health_Bits' animation table. The table has columns for Name, Value, Type, and Comment. The first row is 'NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN' with type 'ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE'. Subsequent rows show individual elements like 'NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[0]' with type 'BYTE'.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN</td><td></td><td>ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[0]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[1]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[2]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[3]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[4]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[5]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Keep in mind that each row represents a byte, which contains eight individual connection health bits. When the DTM for the Ethernet communication module is connected to the physical module, the Value field displays a value for the entire byte.</p> | Name | Value | Type | Comment | NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN | | ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE | | NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[0] | | BYTE | | NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[1] | | BYTE | | NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[2] | | BYTE | | NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[3] | | BYTE | | NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[4] | | BYTE | | NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[5] | | BYTE | |
| Name | Value | Type | Comment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN | | ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[0] | | BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[1] | | BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[2] | | BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[3] | | BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[4] | | BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[5] | | BYTE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |


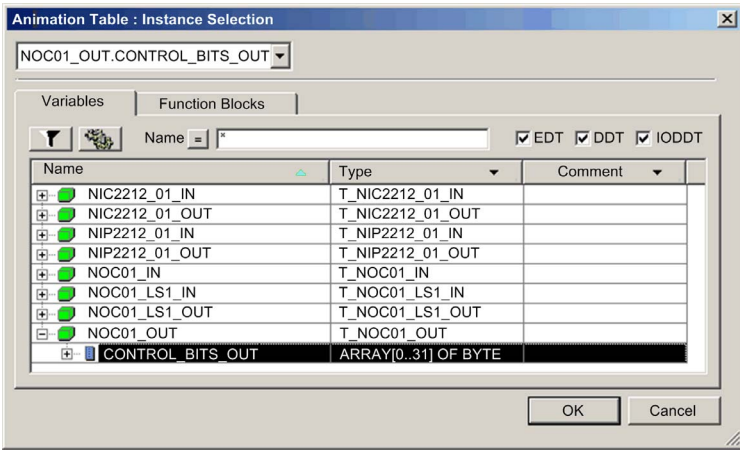
Modifying Connection Control Bits in an Animation Table

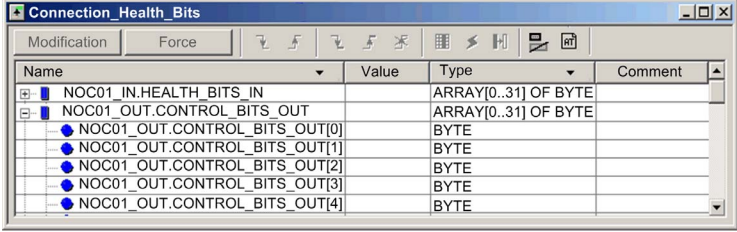
You can also use an animation table to modify the value of a control bit, toggling it on or off.

NOTE: Using control bits to toggle a connection on or off (as described below) is the preferred way of regulating communication with a remote device. Toggling a connection control bit on and off does not affect the address location of I/O items. In either case—on or off—the I/O items remain a part of the configuration at the same address locations.

By contrast, enabling and disabling the **Active Configuration** property for a device or local slave either adds I/O items to, or removes I/O items from, the application. This has the rippling effect of changing the addresses not only for the items of the enabled/disabled device, but also for I/O items relating to other devices in the configuration.

The following example shows you how to add connection control bits to the **Connection_Health_Bits** animation table that you created, above, and use the animation table's **Modification** function to toggle control bits on or off:

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | With the Connection_Health_Bits animation table open, double-click on the next empty row in the Name column, then click the ellipsis button  . The Instance Selection dialog opens. |
| 2 | In the Instance Selection dialog, navigate to and select the entire CONTROL_BITS_OUT array:  |

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Click OK to add the control bit array to the Connection_Health_Bits animation table:</p>  <p>Keep in mind that each row represents a byte, which contains eight individual connection control bits. When the DTM for the Ethernet communication module is connected to the physical module, the Value field displays a value for the entire byte.</p> |
| 4 | <p>With the DTM for the Ethernet communication module connected to the physical module, double click in the Value column for the row (byte) that contains the control bit you want to toggle.</p> |
| 5 | <p>Type a value that toggles the bit (or bits) in the byte you want to change to on or off. For example, suppose the Value field of the control bit displays an initial value of 7. This indicates that the first three (0, 1, and 2) are not established. If you intend to establish the third connection (connection 2), modify the corresponding bit to 0 (type a value of 3).</p> <p>NOTE: When the control bit is 0, the connection is established. When the control bit is 1, the connection is closed.</p> |
| 6 | <p>On your keyboard, press Enter. The control bit for the third connection (i.e. connection number 2) is toggled off.</p> |

Effect of Activating and De-activating Devices on I/O %MW Memory Addresses

Introduction

Control Expert assigns a located address in %MW memory to each input and output variable for a remote device and local slave, when that device or slave is activated.

In addition, Control Expert removes from %MW memory each located variable address whenever the related device or slave is de-activated.

In each case, because of the ordered structure of I/O items in PLC memory (*see page 170*), the activation and de-activation of a single device causes a rippling effect on the address locations of other I/O variables throughout the application.

Because activating and de-activating devices can cause substantial changes to located variable addresses, Schneider Electric recommends the following practices:

- Activate every device and local slave your application is likely to use, and allow these devices to remain activated.
- If it subsequently becomes necessary to disable communications to a device or slave, instead of de-activating it, use the appropriate control bits to toggle off all connections to that slave or device (*see page 175*).
- When configuring function blocks in Control Expert, instead of directly reassigning input and output pins to a specific %MW address, do the following: assign specific input and output pins only to the derived data types and variables automatically created by Control Expert.

The Sample Network

The sample network is a part of the same physical network that has been the subject of our continuing configuration example, and includes:

- the Ethernet communication module, named NOC01
- an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module with I/O modules, named NIC2212_01

Note that, when a new network is created, Control Expert presents three local slave nodes that can be activated and pre-assigns them device numbers 000, 001, and 002. By default, each local slave is not activated. Therefore, each local slave's inputs and outputs are not initially assigned a %MW memory address.

The following example describes the effect of activating a local slave function after another remote device has already been configured and added to the network. In this ca

The sample Ethernet network has been configured as follows:

- Total network inputs and outputs are set in the **Configuration** page of the Ethernet communication module in Control Expert:
 - 100 input words are reserved, beginning at %MW01
 - 100 output words are reserved, beginning at %MW101
- Connection bits for the project include:
 - 32 input bytes (16 words) for health bits with an instance name of NOC01_IN
 - 32 output bytes (16 words) for control bits with an instance name of NOC01_OUT

- Local slave inputs and outputs include:
 - 8 input bytes (4 words) are reserved with an instance name of NOC01_LS1_IN
 - 4 output bytes (2 words) are reserved with an instance name of NOC01_LS1_OUT
- Remote EtherNet/IP device inputs and outputs include:
 - 19 input bytes (10 words) are reserved with an instance name of NIC2212_01_IN
 - 8 output bytes (4 words) are reserved with an instance name of NIC2212_01_OUT

I/O Assignment Without an Activated Local Slave

When you click the **Update application** button in the Ethernet communication module **Configuration** page, with the local slave de-activated, Control Expert auto-generates a collection of variables in support of the application’s I/O items at the following instance locations:

| Name | Type | Address | Value | Comment |
|----------------|------------------|---------|-------|---------|
| NOC01_IN | T_NOC01_IN | %MW1 | | |
| NIC2212_01_IN | T_NIC2212_01_IN | %MW17 | | |
| NOC01_OUT | T_NOC01_OUT | %MW101 | | |
| NIC2212_01_OUT | T_NIC2212_01_OUT | %MW117 | | |

Note the address locations of the remote EtherNet/IP device’s inputs (%MW17) and outputs (%MW117). As you will see, below, when the local slave is activated, these address locations will change.

I/O Assignment With an Activated Local Slave

The following example displays input and output variables for the same project. However, in this example the **Active Configuration** setting for the first local slave was set to **Enabled** in the local slave configuration page (see page 86), before the input and output variables were created. As a result clicking the **Update application** button in the Ethernet communication module **Configuration** page generated the following collection of variables:

| Name | Type | Address | Value | Comment |
|----------------|------------------|---------|-------|---------|
| NOC01_IN | T_NOC01_IN | %MW1 | | |
| NOC01_LS1_IN | T_NOC01_LS1_IN | %MW17 | | |
| NIC2212_01_IN | T_NIC2212_01_IN | %MW21 | | |
| NOC01_OUT | T_NOC01_OUT | %MW101 | | |
| NOC01_LS1_OUT | T_NOC01_LS1_OUT | %MW117 | | |
| NIC2212_01_OUT | T_NIC2212_01_OUT | %MW118 | | |

Notice how the address locations for the remote EtherNet/IP device have shifted:

- inputs (NIC2212_01_IN) have shifted from %MW17 to %MW21
- outputs (NIC2212_01_OUT) have shifted from %MW117 to %MW118

This shift of %MW input and output memory address assignments occurs because the local slave was activated, and local slave I/O variables are placed in a located memory address position ahead of remote EtherNet/IP device I/O variables.

A similar shift of addresses would occur—with respect to both local slave and EtherNet/IP device I/O variable addresses—if a Modbus TCP remote device is activated. This is because Modbus TCP device I/O variables are placed in a located memory address position ahead of both local slave and EtherNet/IP I/O variables.

As stated above, a way to avoid this shift of I/O memory addresses is to activate every local slave and remote device that your project may require, and then allow them to remain active. To later disable a device, use the appropriate control bits to toggle off every connection to that device.

Chapter 5

Optimizing Performance

Overview

This chapter describes how to optimize the performance of your Ethernet network.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

| Section | Topic | Page |
|---------|-----------------------------------------|------|
| 5.1 | Selecting a Switch | 182 |
| 5.2 | Control Application Design | 192 |
| 5.3 | Projecting Ethernet Network Performance | 206 |

Section 5.1

Selecting a Switch

Overview

This section describes how to select an Ethernet switch for your network.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|
| Role of a Switch in an Ethernet Network | 183 |
| Transmission Speed, Duplex and Auto-Negotiation | 184 |
| Quality of Service (QoS) | 185 |
| IGMP Snooping | 186 |
| Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | 187 |
| Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) | 188 |
| Port Mirroring | 190 |
| Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Agent | 191 |

Role of a Switch in an Ethernet Network

Overview

Schneider Electric recommends the use of managed switches—not unmanaged switches or hubs—in process control networks. A managed switch provides more functionality than an unmanaged switch, including the ability to:

- turn switch ports on or off
- configure port speed and duplex settings
- control and monitor message traffic within segments
- prioritize message traffic

Recommended Switch Features

When acquiring an Ethernet switch for your process control network, confirm that the switch includes the following features:

- Multiple speed (10/100/1000 Mbps)
- Full duplex
- QoS
- IGMP snooping
- RSTP
- VLAN support
- Port mirroring
- SNMP agent

Transmission Speed, Duplex and Auto-Negotiation

Introduction

Most Ethernet switches support multiple transmission speeds, full- and half-duplex communication, and offer auto-negotiation capability. Hubs, by contrast, are not designed to support full duplex transmissions.

Duplex

Full duplex enables a switch port to both transmit and receive messages simultaneously, over two dedicated communication channels. Half duplex, by contrast, permits a port to transmit or receive messages in only one direction at a time. Signal collisions are possible in half duplex communications—because messages are transmitted and received over a single channel. Half duplex communications can cause poor performance and message loss.

Auto-Negotiation

Auto-negotiation permits a switch port—connected to a remote device that also supports auto-negotiation—to automatically configure itself for the maximum speed and duplex configuration supported by both devices. However, it may be necessary to manually configure the speed and duplex settings of the switch port, if its peer device does not possess auto-negotiation capability.

Recommendation

- Schneider Electric recommends that you employ only switches that support:
- both auto-negotiation and manual configuration of speed and duplex settings
 - multiple speeds: 10/100/1000 Mbps
 - both full duplex and half duplex

Quality of Service (QoS)

Introduction

A switch that supports QoS packet tagging can be configured to deliver higher priority messages before messages with a lower (or no) priority. This enhances system determinism and increases the timely delivery of prioritized messages.

In the absence of QoS tagging, the switch delivers various application messages on a first-in first-out basis. This can result in poor system performance caused by the long forwarding delay—and late delivery—of high priority application messages, which may be handled after lower priority messages.

Types of QoS

The tagging types are based on the switch configuration:

| Tagging type | Priority mapping rule | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Explicit (QoS tag in Ethernet packet) | DSCP or TOS field in IP header | Each IP based Ethernet packet contains a value in the DSCP or TOS field in its IP header, indicating the QoS priority. The switch forwards packets based on this priority. |
| | VLAN tag in Ethernet header | Each Ethernet packet contains a value in the priority field in the VLAN tag in its Ethernet header, indicating the QoS priority. The switch forwards packets based on this priority. |
| Implicit | Port based | Switch ports are mapped to different QoS priorities. For example, switch port 1 is mapped to QoS priority 1, switch port 2 is mapped to QoS priority 2, etc. |

Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommends the use of devices—including switches—that support explicit QoS tagging.

NOTE: Some switches that support QoS tagging have this feature disabled by default. Confirm that QoS is enabled when deploying each switch.

IGMP Snooping

Multicast Messaging

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) is an essential feature of multicast messaging. IGMP instructs routers and switches to forward Ethernet multicast packets to only those device ports that have requested these packets.

In the absence of IGMP snooping, a switch forwards multicast packets out of all its ports, resulting in greater network traffic, wasted network bandwidth, and degraded network performance.

Configure one Ethernet network switch as the IGMP querier. This switch periodically polls the field devices connected to the network, which causes all connected devices to issue an *IGMP Multicast Group Join* message. The group message is received by all network switches, which update their multicast addressing information databases in response.

Similarly, when an Ethernet device transmits an *IGMP Multicast Group Leave* message, all network switches update their multicast addressing information databases by removing the device from their databases.

Multicast messaging reduces network traffic by:

- requiring that a message be sent only once
- sending the message only to devices for which the message is intended

Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommend the following:

- employ switches that support IGMP V2 or higher
- because IGMP snooping may be disabled by default, enable IGMP snooping for each network switch
- confirm that one switch is configured as the IGMP querier

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)

RSTP

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) is an OSI layer 2 protocol defined by IEEE 802.1D 2004 that performs the following functions:

- it creates a loop-free logical network path for Ethernet devices that are part of a topology that includes redundant physical paths
- it automatically restores network communication—by activating redundant links—in the event the network experiences a broken link

RSTP software, operating simultaneously in every network switch, obtains information from each switch which enables the software to create a hierarchical logical network topology. RSTP is a flexible protocol that can be implemented on many physical topologies, including ring, mesh, or a combination of ring and mesh.

Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommends the following practices:

- Use RSTP instead of STP: RSTP provides a faster recovery time than STP
NOTE: Recovery time is the time that elapses between the moment a broken link is detected to the moment network service is restored. Recovery time depends on:
 - the number of switches in the topology: the more switches, the longer the recovery time
 - the processing speed of the switches in the topology: the slower the speed, the longer the recovery time
 - the bandwidth, traffic load, and topology pattern
- If the switch is part of a topology with redundant physical paths: enable RSTP.
- If the switch is part of a topology that does not include redundant physical paths: disable RSTP—in this case, disabling RSTP improves network performance.

Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN)

Introduction

Use VLANs to divide a larger network into smaller virtual groups of devices, and to split a switch into many virtual network switches. VLANs permit the creation of logically separate groups of network devices, without having to physically re-wire those devices.

When a switch receives a message directed to a specific VLAN, it forwards that message only to the switch ports connected to devices that are members of that VLAN. The switch does not send the message to other ports.

A VLAN reduces network traffic, blocks multicast and broadcast traffic from other VLANs, provides separation between VLANs, and improves system performance.

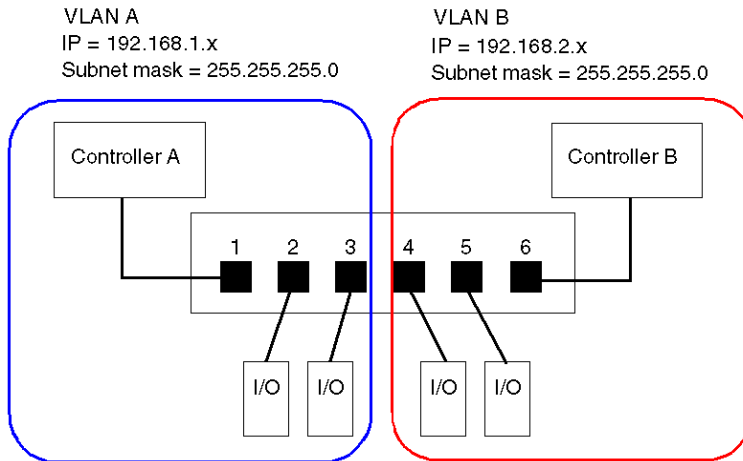
VLAN Types

Depending upon the switch features, there many different ways to define and implement VLANs:

| Tagging type | Mapping rule | Description |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Explicit (VLAN tag in Ethernet packet) | Tag based | Each VLAN group is assigned a unique VLAN ID, which is included in each Ethernet packet. The switch forwards packets based on VLAN ID. |
| Implicit (no VLAN tag in Ethernet packet) | Port based | Switch ports are assigned to different VLANs, when the switch is configured (see example, below.) |
| | MAC based | A switch maps VLAN group membership—and forwards Ethernet frames—based on device MAC address. |
| | Protocol based | A switch maps VLAN group membership—and forwards Ethernet frames—based on message protocol. |
| | IP-subnet based | A switch maps VLAN group membership—and forwards Ethernet frames—based on IP subnet portion of the target address. |

Example

In the port-based VLAN example, below, switch ports 1, 2, and 3 are assigned to VLAN A, while switch ports 4, 5, and 6 are assigned to VLAN B:



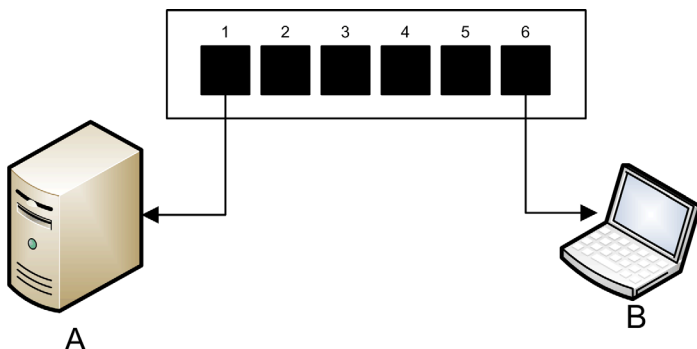
NOTE: A single port can be a member of multiple VLANs.

Port Mirroring

Introduction

Port mirroring lets you troubleshoot switch port transmissions by copying the traffic that passes through one port (the source or mirrored port) and sending the copied transmission to a second port (the destination or mirror) port, where the packets can be examined.

In the following example, the data packets transmitted over port 1 are copied and sent to port 6. To troubleshoot port 1, a PC with packet sniffing software is used to analyze the traffic on port 6 and thereby troubleshoot port 1.



A target device of port 1 transmissions

B PC with packet sniffing software connected to port 6, which mirrors port 1 transmissions

Port mirroring does not affect the normal forwarding behavior of the mirrored port. In many switches, you can configure port mirroring so that you can forward and examine:

- only the incoming packets of a single mirrored port
- only the outgoing packets of a single mirrored port
- both the incoming and outgoing packets of a single mirrored port
- the packets of several mirrored ports—or the whole switch

A packet sniffer's troubleshooting features should include:

- analyzing network performance
- monitoring network activity

Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommends implementing port mirroring as follows:

- Use a destination or mirror port only for port mirroring and not for any other purpose. Connect only the PC with packet sniffer to the mirroring port.
- When configuring the switch, confirm that port mirroring is designed to forward packets—e.g., incoming, outgoing, or both—to meet your requirements.
- A packet sniffer's troubleshooting features should include the capabilities of analyzing network performance and monitoring network activity.

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Agent

An *SNMP agent* is a software component that responds to queries about the management data of the switch, and reports events to another device acting as an SNMP manager.

The management data for a switch can include:

- operational state information (interface status, mode of operation, etc.)
- configuration parameters (IP address, features enabled / disabled, timer values, etc.)
- performance statistics (frame counters, event logs, etc.)

If a switch is equipped with SNMP agent software, a designated SNMP manager can:

- retrieve management data about the switch
- control the switch by editing its configuration settings
- receive traps—or notices of events—affecting the state of the switch

Section 5.2

Control Application Design

Overview

In a control system, control and automation are achieved by processing and delivering various application service messages.

Understanding messages, allocating network bandwidth among messages, and determining the time required for a message to traverse the network are all major performance considerations of your control application design.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|------------------------------------------------|------|
| Message Types | 193 |
| Message Connection Types | 195 |
| TCP and CIP Connections | 197 |
| Message Priority | 198 |
| Messaging Performance | 199 |
| Message Frequency | 200 |
| Allocating Network Bandwidth | 202 |
| Estimating Message Traverse and Response Times | 204 |

Message Types

Overview

Two types of industrial Ethernet message types are supported by the Ethernet communication module:

| Message Type | Includes... |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Explicit | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Non-time critical management data ● Read/write application data |
| Implicit | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Real-time I/O data ● Real-time control data ● Real-time synchronization data |

Explicit Messages

Explicit messages transmit information used for device configuration and diagnostics, and for data collection. In explicit messaging, the client issues a request; the server receives, processes, and sends a response back to the client.

You can specify a response timeout value, indicating how long the client waits for a response from the server. If the client does not receive a response from the server within the response timeout period, the client reissues its request. The length of the response timeout will vary depending on the requirements of your application.

Examples of explicit messages include: SNMP messages, FTP messages, CIP establish connection messages, EtherNet/IP query and response messages, and DHCP messages.

The characteristics of explicit messaging are:

- point-to-point client-server mode
- variable size
- variable frequency
- long response time
- long connection timeout

Explicit messages can be sent as either connected or unconnected, depending on the frequency of your need for data, and on the level of service required:

| Message type | Characteristics |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Begins when an originating device initiates a connection by sending a request to a target device. ● The connection is established when the originator receives a successful response from the target. ● A CIP connected message has a higher priority and provides better service, but requires a greater amount of resources from both the target and originator devices. ● Used for recurring requests, and for high priority parameter monitoring. ● Typically use short response timeout settings. |

| Message type | Characteristics |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Unconnected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Less resource intensive. ● Used for less frequent requests, and for lower priority parameter monitoring. ● Typically use very long response timeout settings. |

NOTE: The response timeout can be configured using the **EM Request Timeout** parameter (located in the **Channel Properties** → **EtherNet/IP** page).

Implicit Messages

Implicit messages consist of packets of data that are time critical. Implicit messages are used for real-time control and synchronization. Examples of implicit messages include: real-time I/O data, motion control data, functional diagnostic data, real-time synchronization data, and network topology management data.

Implicit messages require determinism and high performance in message processing and delivery.

The characteristics of implicit messaging are:

- producer/consumer mode (EtherNet/IP) or client/server mode (Modbus TCP)
- small, fixed data size
- fixed frequency
- short response time
- short connection timeout

Message Connection Types

Introduction

The transmission of most messages require a point-to-point connection between a transmitter and receiver.

For all types of explicit messages, the connection automatically closes when the communication ends, or is timed-out.

For implicit messages, keep the connection open. If the I/O connection—CIP for EtherNet/IP, TCP for Modbus TCP—the transmission stops. In this case, the scanner employs the TCP implicit messaging connection to dynamically re-establish the CIP connection.

Calculating the Connection Timeout

For CIP connections, you can control the connection timeout setting by specifying both the network multiplier and the requested packet interval (RPI in ms):

$$\text{Timeout} = \text{Network Multiplier} \times \text{RPI}$$

NOTE: You can locate and configure these values in the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool. Open the **DTM Editor** for the Ethernet communication module, then edit the following settings:

- the network multiple is the **Time-out Multiplier** parameter found in the **Device List** → **<device>** → **<connection>** → **Connection Settings** page, and
- the RPI is the **EM Connection RPI** parameter found in the **Channel Properties** → **EtherNet/IP** page

A large timeout value may affect the ability of the network to optimize the availability of connection resources, re-establish connections, and update I/O data when the connection is lost.

A small timeout value may unnecessarily cause the frequent closing and re-establishing of connections.

It is preferable to use a larger timeout value for explicit messaging connections, and a smaller timeout value for implicit messaging connections. The specific value you employ depends on your application requirements.

Connection Types and Protocols

The connection type and transport protocol employed depends upon the message type and message protocol, as follows:

| Message Type | Message Protocol | Connection Type | Connection Protocol |
|--------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Explicit | EtherNet/IP | CIP, TCP | TCP/IP |
| | Modbus TCP | TCP | TCP/IP |
| | FTP | TCP | TCP/IP |
| | HTML (web) | TCP | TCP/IP |
| | SMTP | TCP | TCP/IP |
| | SNMP | N/A | UDP/IP |
| | SNTP | N/A | UDP/IP |
| | DHCP | N/A | UDP/IP |
| | BOOTP | N/A | UDP/IP |
| Implicit | EtherNet/IP | CIP, TCP | UDP/IP |
| | Modbus TCP | TCP | TCP/IP |
| | IGMP | N/A | IP |
| | RSTP | N/A | Ethernet |

Connection- Overhead

Any message transmission includes overhead, which consumes network bandwidth and processing time. The smaller the size of the data transmitted, the relatively greater the portion of the message allocated to overhead.

Consequently, it makes sense to design your I/O messaging by consolidating data from multiple I/O devices—with similar processing capabilities and performance needs—and transmitting it through a single adapter. This design conserves bandwidth, stores network resources, and improves performance.

TCP and CIP Connections

Number of Connections Supported

The Ethernet communication module employs both TCP and CIP connections to support both implicit and explicit messages, as follows:

| Connection Type | Maximum Number of Connections per Module |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|
| CIP | 256 |
| TCP | 128 |

NOTE:

- A single TCP connection can support multiple CIP connections.
- The maximum number of TCP connections does not include connections dedicated to other services, for example, FTP and Web connections.

Message Priority

QoS

The routers and switches that comprise your network infrastructure cannot distinguish between explicit message and implicit messages. However, these devices—including the Ethernet communication module—can support QoS Ethernet packet tagging (*see page 80*).

Using QoS tagging, these devices can handle messages they send and receive according to each message's tagged priority, forwarding higher priority messages before lower priority messages.

Messaging Performance

Maximum Messaging Load

The Ethernet communication module supports the following maximum messaging loads:

| Message Type | Maximum Messaging Load |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Implicit (EtherNet/IP plus Modbus TCP) | 12000 packets per second, with no simultaneous explicit messages |
| Explicit (EtherNet/IP plus Modbus TCP) | 120 packets per second, with a maximum of 6000 simultaneous implicit messages |

Message Frequency

Introduction

The term *message frequency* refers to how often a device transmits a particular type of message. Message frequency directly affects control network load and performance, as well as the CPU capacity of every network device that processes these messages.

Depending on your application requirements, real-time I/O data can be transmitted using implicit messaging as follows:

- on a cyclic basis, at the *request packet interval* (RPI) rate, or
- upon the occurrence of a change of state event

Cyclic Real-Time I/O Messaging

Much of the load on an Ethernet control network consists of cyclic real-time I/O data.

Consequently, carefully consider how to set the RPI value for transmitting these messages:

- A small RPI value results in more frequent, and more numerous, message transmissions. This increases network load, and may waste network resources and degrade system performance.
- Conversely, a larger RPI value—for example, one that is equal (or nearly equal) to the frequency of your application's need for new data—can result in your application not receiving the most current data. Also, if a connection is lost, the time to re-establish the connection will be relatively long, because the connection timeout is proportional to the RPI.

Schneider Electric recommends setting RPI to 50% of the actual frequency by which your application requires data for cyclic real-time I/O messaging.

NOTE: The I/O scanner can simultaneously communicate with different I/O adapters at different RPI rates. This enhances the ability of the PLC to control and monitor different devices with varying processing capacities.

Change of State I/O Messaging

For change of state triggered real-time I/O data messages:

- output transmissions occur at the rate of the PLC controller application cycle time
- input transmissions occur whenever an input event is detected by an input device

Consequently, for an I/O device with a rapid response and transmission time, using a direct connection to the I/O device may be more efficient than using a rack optimized connection. In this design, because only the single device input data is sent, the size of the frequently transmitted message is potentially much smaller than would be the case if the message contained data from every I/O device on the remote island.

NOTE: A change of state (versus cyclic) triggered real-time I/O message usually reduces network load. Configure the change of state message with a longer connection timeout value.

RSTP and IGMP Messaging

RSTP and IGMP messages usually consume a very small amount of network bandwidth. Set up the IGMP query period based on your application requirements.

Scheduling Certain Explicit Messages

Depending on your application requirements, you can also configure certain explicit messages to be transmitted either cyclically or upon the occurrence of a change of state event. For example, you can periodically monitor a device using SNMP query, Web pages, EtherNet/IP, and Modbus TCP. The cyclic period should be configured so that the total load consumed by explicit messaging does not exceed 10% of network capacity.

Allocating Network Bandwidth

Introduction

Maximum network bandwidth equals your network speed, for example 100 Mbps. When designing your control network, allocate network bandwidth among the control application messages required by your application.

NOTE: Schneider Electric recommends you reserve at least the following amounts for processing explicit messaging:

- 10% of network bandwidth
- 10% of CPU processing capacity for each network device

Message Load and Message Bandwidth

Message Load—in packets per second (PPS)—represents the number of packets in a single message that are received and sent within one second. *Message Load* can be estimated as follows:

Message Load =

$$(\text{number of packets per connection}) \times (\text{number of connections}) / \text{RPI}$$

The *number of packets per connection* value depends on the capacity of the device, and can be either:

- 1: for connections that support uni-directional communication
- 2: for connections that support input and output (for producer/consumer mode) or request and response (for client/server mode) per one time bi-directional exchange, or

The connection can be used for either explicit or implicit messaging. For UDP-based explicit messaging, assume that each client represents one connection, and that messages are transmitted cyclically.

Message Bandwidth (in bits) can be calculated as follows:

Message Bandwidth = message packet size (bits) x Message Load

Based on the portion of network bandwidth you want to allocate to a particular message, you can use the *Message Load* and *Message Bandwidth* formulae to calculate the fastest RPI for the message.

Device Load and Device Bandwidth

Device Load—measured in number of packets—represents the load contributed by messages received and sent by a device within one second. *Device Load* is the sum of the *Message Load* values for every message handled by the device.

If the *Device Load* exceeds the device's processing capability, performance of both the device and the network is degraded.

NOTE: Schneider Electric recommends that *Device Load* not exceed 90% of CPU processing capacity of each device.

Device Bandwidth—measured in bits—is the sum of the *Message Bandwidth* values for messages handled by the device

In your control application design, determine whether the I/O scanner device can handle the load contributed by every I/O adapter device. To do this, perform the following steps:

- 1 Calculate the implicit messaging load and bandwidth for each remote device.
- 2 Sum the load and bandwidth estimates for every remote device.
- 3 Compare the total implicit messaging load and bandwidth against the maximum implicit messaging capacity of the device acting as I/O scanner.

If the projected total load or bandwidth for a communication module acting as an I/O scanner exceeds its implicit messaging load or bandwidth limits, consider one or more of the following corrective actions:

- If the I/O adapter supports rack optimized connections, and if a single rack of digital I/O uses multiple direct connections, replace the direct connections with a single rack optimized connection, if possible.
- Increase the RPI setting for a device where possible.
- Add another communication module to act as an I/O scanner, and re-design the network in order to share the load.

Network Load and Network Bandwidth

Network Load—measured in number of packets—can be estimated as the sum of the *Device Load* of the adapter devices, or of the scanner devices.

Network Bandwidth—measured in bits—can be estimated as the sum of the *Device Bandwidth* of the adapter devices, or of the scanner devices.

NOTE: Schneider Electric recommends that *Network Load* not exceed 90% of maximum network bandwidth.

If necessary, you may need to optimize your control application design by:

- adjusting device RPI settings
- changing connection types (e.g., from direct to rack optimized)
- modify the configuration
- change the network topology

Estimating Message Traverse and Response Times

Message Traverse Time

Message Traverse Time is defined as the time required for a message to travel from its point of origin to its targeted destination over a network path. As the messages travels over the network path, it may pass through—and be forwarded by—a number of intermediate network devices, including switches and routers.

Message Traverse Time is impacted by several factors, including, for example, the following:

- the number of forwarding network devices
- the transmission delay of each forwarding device
- network load
- message priority

Message Traverse Time can be estimated by determining the transmission delay (the store and forward delay) of intermediate network devices and counting the number of such devices.

Assuming each forwarding device is a switch, and each switch presents the same transmission delay, the following formula can be used:

Message Traverse Time =

$$\text{(Switch Transmission Delay) x (Number of Switches)}$$

Schneider Electric recommends that you estimate a worst-case *Message Traverse Time*, as follows:

| Step | Description |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Determine the worst case network load. |
| 2 | Obtain switch performance information, under varying network loads, and use the worst case—i.e., the largest—transmission delay value. |
| 3 | Determine the logical network topology that yields the longest path—i.e. the greatest number of switches—through which a message passes. |
| 4 | Using the largest transmission delay value and the largest number of forwarding switches, use the formula (above) to calculate a worst-cast <i>Message Traverse Time</i> . |

Message Response Time

After calculating *Message Traverse Time* (above), you can next measure *Message Response Time*, which measures the total time required for:

- a message to travel from a client device over the network to a server
- the message to be processed by the server
- the server response to travel back to the client over the network

Message Response Time can be calculated as follows:

Message Response Time =

$$(2 \times (\text{Message Traverse Time})) + (\text{Server Processing Time})$$

In the above formula, '2' indicates a round trip required for client/server communication.

After *Message Response Time* is calculated, you can determine and configure the following parameters, both of which are found in the **Channel Properties** → **EtherNet/IP** page of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool:

- **EM Request Timeout** value, and
- **EM Connection RPI**

Section 5.3

Projecting Ethernet Network Performance

Network Load and Bandwidth Calculation Example

Network Devices

This example estimates the performance for an Ethernet network composed of the following devices:

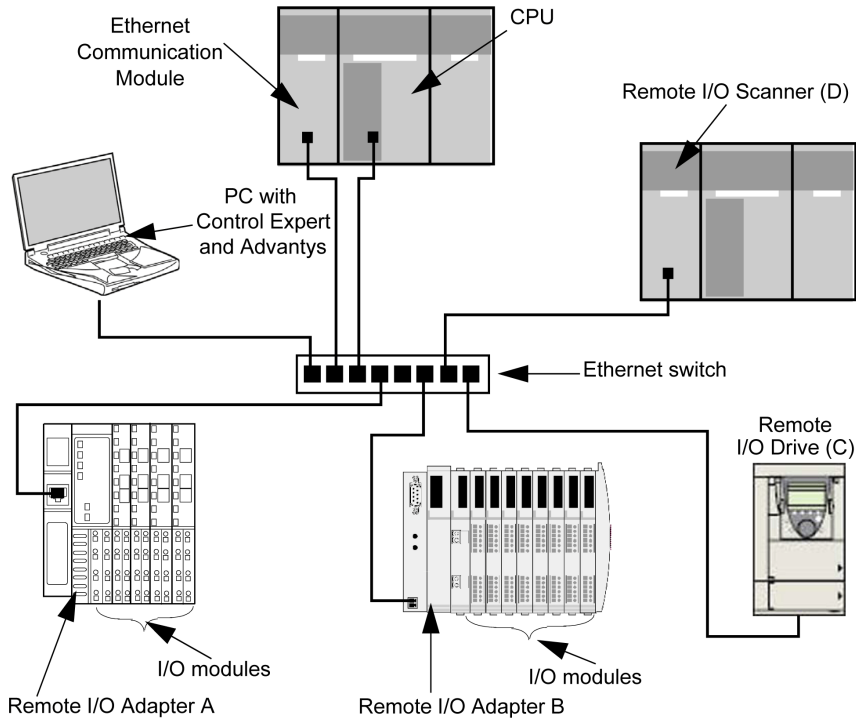
- a PLC that controls 3 remote I/O stations (A, B, and C)
- 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module, acting as the local I/O scanner, installed in the PLC rack
- an 8-port Ethernet managed switch
- a PC running used to obtain diagnostic data via explicit messages running the following software:
 - Control Expert
 - the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool
- 4 remote devices, acting as:
 - an I/O adapter (A) for a rack of I/O modules
 - a second I/O adapter (B) for a rack of I/O modules
 - a remote I/O drive (C)
 - a remote I/O scanner (D)

Control Expert software running in the PC is used to configure the CPU controller.

For programming purposes you need a connection to the PLC either through the CPU's Ethernet port or other supported programming paths.

Network Diagram

The proposed network diagram looks like this:



Network Load and Bandwidth Limits

When performing calculations, keep in mind that the Ethernet module and remote devices cannot exceed their implicit messaging and bandwidth limits:

| Device | Load Limits | Bandwidth Limits |
|-------------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| Ethernet Communication Module | 12000 pps | 80 Mbps |
| I/O Adapter (A) | 8000 pps | 70 Mbps |
| I/O Adapter (B) | 8000 pps | 70 Mbps |
| I/O Drive (C) | 8000 pps | 70 Mbps |
| I/O Scanner (D) | 12000 pps | 80 Mbps |
| Switch | 16000 pps | 90 Mbps |

Remote Device Connections and RPI

For the purpose of this example, it is assumed that the remote devices require the following numbers of CIP connections, and are configured for the stated requested packet interval (RPI) settings:

| Device | CIP I/O Connections | RPI Setting | I/O Packet Size |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| I/O Adapter (A) | 5 | 20 ms | 8000 bits |
| I/O Adapter (B) | 2 | 30 ms | 4096 bits |
| I/O Drive (C) | 2 | 30 ms | 8000 bits |
| I/O Scanner (D) | 2 | 50 ms | 8000 bits |

For the purposes of this example, it is also assumed that every connection is bi-directional.

I/O Scanner Calculations

The Ethernet communication module, acting as local I/O scanner, has to handle the implicit messaging load contributed by the remote devices. Your task is to:

- 1 estimate the implicit messaging load and bandwidth contributed by each remote device
- 2 sum the load and bandwidth values for each remote device
- 3 compare the total load and bandwidth against the maximum implicit messaging capacity of the local I/O scanner

Recall that the implicit messaging load calculation formula for a single remote device is:

$$\text{Load} = (\text{number of packets per connection}) \times (\text{number of connections}) / \text{RPI}$$

Because every connection is assumed to be bi-directional, the *number of packets per connection* value is 2. Consequently, the estimated implicit messaging load contributed by each device, and the total implicit messaging load the local I/O scanner has to handle can be estimated as follows:

Load:

| Device | Number of packets per connection | X | Number of connections | + | RPI | = | Load |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------------------|---|-------|---|---------|
| I/O Adapter (A) | 2 | X | 5 | ÷ | 20 ms | = | 500 pps |
| I/O Adapter (B) | 2 | X | 2 | ÷ | 30 ms | = | 134 pps |
| I/O Drive (C) | 2 | X | 2 | ÷ | 30 ms | = | 134 pps |
| I/O Scanner (D) | 2 | X | 2 | ÷ | 50 ms | = | 80 pps |
| Total | | | | | | = | 848 pps |
| Switch | | | | | | = | 848 pps |

Bandwidth:

| Device | Packet size | X | Load | = | Bandwidth |
|-----------------|-------------|---|---------|---|------------|
| I/O Adapter (A) | 8000 bits | X | 500 pps | = | 4 Mbps |
| I/O Adapter (B) | 4096 bits | X | 134 pps | = | 0.554 Mbps |
| I/O Drive (C) | 8000 bits | X | 134 pps | = | 1.07 Mbps |
| I/O Scanner (D) | 8000 bits | X | 80 pps | = | 0.64 Mbps |
| Total | | | | = | 6.26 Mbps |
| Switch | | | | = | 6.26 Mbps |

Conclusion

The projected total load for the module—848 pps—is within the device implicit messaging limit of 12000 data packets per second. The projected total bandwidth for the communication module—6.26 Mbps—is also within the device implicit messaging bandwidth limit of 80 Mbps. The projected total load and bandwidth for the remote devices (including the switch) are also within their 90% load and bandwidth limits:

| Device | 90% of Load Limit | 90% of Bandwidth Limit |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Ethernet Communication Module | 10800 pps | 72 Mbps |
| I/O Adapter (A) | 7200 pps | 63 Mbps |
| I/O Adapter (B) | 7200 pps | 63 Mbps |
| I/O Drive (C) | 7200 pps | 63 Mbps |
| I/O Scanner (D) | 10800 pps | 72 Mbps |

NOTE: Although message load contributed by explicit messaging are not included in the above calculations, such load contributions are presumed to be less than 10% of the device load and bandwidth.

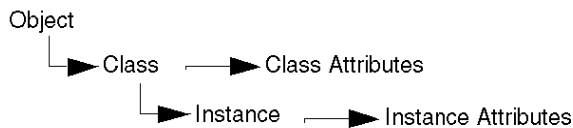
Chapter 6

CIP Objects

Overview

The Ethernet communication module can access CIP data and services located in connected devices. The CIP objects and their content depends on the design of each device.

CIP object data and content are exposed—and accessed—hierarchically in the following nested levels:



NOTE: You can use explicit messaging to access either:

- a collection of instance attributes, by including in the explicit message address only the object's class and instance values, or
- a single attribute, by extending the explicit message address to include not only the object's class and instance values but also a specific attribute value

When the Ethernet communication module's local slave service is activated, remote devices can send explicit messages to the module's CIP object structure and:

- access module data, or
- execute module commands

This chapter describes the CIP objects the Ethernet communication module exposes to remote devices.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Identity Object | 213 |
| Assembly Object | 215 |
| Connection Manager Object | 217 |
| Modbus Object | 220 |
| Quality Of Service (QoS) Object | 222 |
| TCP/IP Interface Object | 224 |
| Ethernet Link Object | 226 |
| EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics Object | 231 |
| EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics Object | 234 |
| IO Connection Diagnostics Object | 236 |
| EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics Object | 240 |
| EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List Object | 242 |

Identity Object

Overview

The Identity object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

01

Instance IDs

The Identity object presents two instances:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

Identity object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|-----|--------------|--------|-----|-----|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Vendor ID | UINT | X | — |
| 02 | 02 | Device Type | UINT | X | — |
| 03 | 03 | Product Code | UINT | X | — |
| 04 | 04 | Revision | STRUCT | X | — |
| | | Major | USINT | | |
| | | Minor | USINT | | |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----|-----|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 05 | 05 | Status bit 2: 0x01=the module is configured bits 4-7: 0x03=no I/O connections established 0x06=at least 1 I/O connection in run mode 0x07=at least 1 I/O connection established, all in IDLE mode | Word | X | — |
| 06 | 06 | Serial Number | UDINT | X | — |
| 07 | 07 | Product Name | STRING | X | — |
| 18 | 24 | Modbus Identity | STRUCT | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Services

The Identity object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|-------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X | Returns: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> all class attributes (instance = 0) instance attributes 1 to 7 (instance = 1) |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X | Returns the value of the specified attribute. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Assembly Object

Overview

The Assembly object consists of the attributes and services described below.

NOTE: You can send an explicit message to the Assembly object only when no other connections have been established that read from or write to this object. For example, you can send an explicit message to the Assembly object if a local slave instance is enabled, but no other module is scanning that local slave.

Class ID

04

Instance IDs

The Assembly object presents the following instance identifiers:

- 0: class
- 101, 102, 111, 112, 121, 122: instance

Attributes

The Assembly object consists of the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| 03 | Number of Instances | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance attributes:

| Instance ID | Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|---------------|-----|-----|
| 101 | 03 | Local slave 1: T->O input data | Array of BYTE | X | — |
| 102 | | Local slave 1: O>T | Array of BYTE | X | X |
| 111 | | Local slave 2: T->O input data | Array of BYTE | X | — |
| 112 | | Local slave 2: O>T | Array of BYTE | X | X |
| 121 | | Local slave 3: T->O input data | Array of BYTE | X | — |
| 122 | | Local slave 3: O>T | Array of BYTE | X | X |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Services

The CIP Assembly object performs these services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|-------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X | Returns the value of the specified attribute |
| 10 | 16 | Set_Attribute_Single ¹ | — | X | Returns these values: 0E=attribute not settable: assembly is not o->T type 0F=permission denied: assembly is being used by an active connection 13=config too small: the Set_Attribute_Single command contains partial data 15=data too big: the Set_Attribute_Single command contains too much data |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |
| 1. When valid, the size of the data written to the Assembly object using the Set_Attribute_Single service equals the size of the Assembly object as configured in the target module. | | | | | |

Connection Manager Object

Overview

The Connection Manager object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

06

Instance IDs

The Connection Manager object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

Connection Manager object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|------|-----|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Open Requests | UINT | X | X | Number of Forward Open service requests received |
| 02 | 02 | Open Format Rejects | UINT | X | X | Number of Forward Open service requests that were rejected due to bad format |
| 03 | 03 | Open Resource Rejects | UINT | X | X | Number of Forward Open service requests that were rejected due to lack of resources |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|--------|-----|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | | |
| 04 | 04 | Open Other Rejects | UINT | X | X | Number of Forward Open service requests that were rejected for reasons other than bad format or lack of resources |
| 05 | 05 | Close Requests | UINT | X | X | Number of Forward Close service requests received |
| 06 | 06 | Close Format Requests | UINT | X | X | Number of Forward Close service requests that were rejected due to bad format |
| 07 | 07 | Close Other Requests | UINT | X | X | Number of Forward Close service requests that were rejected for reasons other than bad format |
| 08 | 08 | Connection Timeouts | UINT | X | X | Total number of connection timeouts that occurred in connections controlled by this connections manager |
| 09 | 09 | Connection Entry List | STRUCT | X | — | 0 (Unsupported optional item) |
| 0B | 11 | CPU_Utilization | UINT | X | — | 0 (Unsupported optional item) |
| 0C | 12 | MaxBuffSize | UDINT | X | — | 0 (Unsupported optional item) |
| 0D | 13 | BufSize Remaining | UDINT | X | — | 0 (Unsupported optional item) |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | | |

Services

The Connection Manager object performs the following services on the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|-------|----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X | Returns the value of all attributes. |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X | Returns the value of the specified attribute. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Modbus Object

Overview

The Modbus object converts EtherNet/IP service requests to Modbus functions, and Modbus exception codes to CIP General Status codes. It presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

44 (hex), 68 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The Modbus object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

The Modbus object consists of the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|
| — | No instance attributes are supported | — | — | — |

Services

The Modbus object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance |
|------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------|-------|----------|
| hex | dec | | | |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X |
| 4B | 75 | Read_Discrete_Inputs | — | X |
| 4C | 76 | Read_Coils | — | X |
| 4D | 77 | Read_Input_Registers | — | X |
| 4E | 78 | Read_Holding_Registers | — | X |
| 4F | 79 | Write_Coils | — | X |
| 50 | 80 | Write_Holding_Registers | — | X |
| 51 | 81 | Modbus_Passthrough | — | X |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | |

Quality Of Service (QoS) Object

Overview

The QoS object implements Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP or *DiffServe*) values for the purpose of providing a method of prioritizing Ethernet messages. The QoS object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

48 (hex), 72 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The QoS object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

The QoS object consists of the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|----------------|-------|-----|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 04 | DSCP Urgent | USINT | X | X | For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 55. |
| 05 | DSCP Scheduled | USINT | X | X | For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 47. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|---------------|-------|-----|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 06 | DSCP High | USINT | X | X | For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 43. |
| 07 | DSCP Low | USINT | X | X | For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 31. |
| 08 | DSCP Explicit | USINT | X | X | For CIP explicit messages (transport class 2/3 and UCMM), default value = 27. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

NOTE: A change in the instance attribute value takes effect on device re-start, for configurations made from flash memory.

Services

The QoS object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance |
|------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|-------|----------|
| hex | dec | | | |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X |
| 10 | 16 | Set_Attribute_Single | — | X |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | |

TCP/IP Interface Object

Overview

The TCP/IP interface object presents the instances (per network), attributes and services described below.

Class ID

F5 (hex), 245 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The TCP/IP interface object presents 2 instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

TCP/IP interface object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 01 | Status | DWORD | X | — | 0x01 |
| 02 | Configuration Capability | DWORD | X | — | 0x01 = from BootP 0x11 = from flash 0x00 = other |
| 03 | Configuration Control | DWORD | X | X | 0x01 = out-of-box default |
| 04 | Physical Link Object | STRUCT | X | — | |
| | Path Size | UINT | | | |
| | Path | Padded EPATH | | | |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------|-----|-----|---------------------------|
| 05 | Interface Configuration | STRUCT | X | X | 0x00 = out-of-box default |
| | IP Address | UDINT | | | |
| | Network Mask | UDINT | | | |
| | Gateway Address | UDINT | | | |
| | Name Server | UDINT | | | |
| | Name Server 2 | UDINT | | | |
| | Domain Name | STRING | | | |
| 06 | Host Name | STRING | X | — | |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Services

The TCP/IP interface object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|-------|----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X | Returns the value of all attributes. |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X | Returns the value of the specified attribute. |
| 10 | 16 | Set_Attribute_Single ¹ | — | X | Sets the value of the specified attribute. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |
| 1. The Set_Attribute_Single service can execute only when these preconditions are satisfied: | | | | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Configure the Ethernet communication module to obtain its IP address from flash memory. ● Confirm that the PLC is in stop mode. | | | | | |

Ethernet Link Object

Overview

The Ethernet Link object consists of the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

F6 (hex), 246 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The Ethernet Link object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

The Ethernet Link object presents the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| 03 | Number of Instances | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-----|------------------|---------------------|-----|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Interface Speed | UDINT | X | — | Valid values include: 0, 10000000, 100000000 |
| 02 | 02 | Interface Flags | DWORD | X | — | Bit 0: link status 0 = Inactive 1 = Active Bit 1: duplex mode 0 = half duplex 1 = full duplex Bits 2—4: negotiation status 3 = successfully negotiated speed and duplex 4 = forced speed and link Bit 5: manual setting requires reset 0 = automatic 1 = device need reset Bit 6: local hardware detected error 0 = no event 1 = event detected |
| 03 | 03 | Physical Address | ARRAY of 6 USINT | X | — | module MAC address |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-------|--------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | | |
| 04 | 04 | Interface Counters | STRUCT | X | — | |
| | | In octets | UDINT | | | octets received on the interface |
| | | In Ucast Packets | UDINT | | | unicast packets received on the interface |
| | | In NUcast Packets | UDINT | | | non-unicast packets received on the interface |
| | | In Discards | UDINT | | | inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded |
| | | In Errors | UDINT | | | inbound packets with detected errors (does not include in discards) |
| | | In Unknown Protos | UDINT | | | inbound packets with unknown protocol |
| | | Out Octets | UDINT | | | octets sent on the interface |
| | | Out Ucast Packets | UDINT | | | unicast packets sent on the interface |
| | | Out NUcast Packets | UDINT | | | non-unicast packets sent on the interface |
| | | Out Discards | UDINT | | | outbound packets discarded |
| Out Errors | UDINT | | | outbound packets with detected errors | | |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-----|------------------------|--------|-----|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | | |
| 05 | 05 | Media Counters | STRUCT | X | — | |
| | | Alignment Errors | UDINT | | | frames that are not an integral number of octets in length |
| | | FCS Errors | UDINT | | | bad CRC — frames received do not pass the FCS check |
| | | Single Collisions | UDINT | | | successfully transmitted frames that experienced exactly 1 collision |
| | | Multiple Collisions | UDINT | | | successfully transmitted frames that experienced more than 1 collision |
| | | SQE Test Errors | UDINT | | | number of times the detected SQE test error is generated |
| | | Deferred Transmissions | UDINT | | | frames for which first transmission attempt is delayed because the medium is busy |
| | | Late Collisions | UDINT | | | number of times a collision is detected later than 512 bit times into the transmission of a packet |
| | | Excessive Collisions | UDINT | | | frames that do not transmit due to excessive collisions |
| | | MAC Transmit Errors | UDINT | | | frames that do not transmit due to a detected internal MAC sublayer transmit error |
| | | Carrier Sense Errors | UDINT | | | times that the carrier sense condition was lost or not asserted when attempting to transmit a frame |
| | | Frame Too Long | UDINT | | | frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size |
| | | MAC Receive Errors | UDINT | | | frames not received on an interface due to a detected internal MAC sublayer receive error |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-----|------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | | |
| 06 | 06 | Interface Control | STRUCT | X | X | API of the connection |
| | | Control Bits | WORD | | | Bit 0: Auto-negotiation 0 = disabled 1 = enabled Note: When auto-negotiation is enabled, 0x0C (object state conflict) is returned when attempting to set either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● forced interface speed or ● forced duplex mode |
| | | Forced Interface Speed | UINT | | | Bit 1: forced duplex mode (if auto-negotiation bit = 0) 0 = half duplex 1 = full duplex Valid values include: 10000000, 100000000 Note: Attempting to set any other value returns the detected error 0x09 (invalid attribute value) |
| 10 | 16 | Interface Label | SHORT_STRING | X | — | A fixed textual string identifying the interface, that should include 'internal' for internal interfaces. Maximum number of characters is 64. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | | |

Services

The Ethernet Link object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance |
|------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|-------|----------|
| hex | dec | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X |
| 10 | 16 | Set_Attribute_Single | — | X |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X |
| 4C | 76 | Get_and_Clear | — | X |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | |

EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics Object

Overview

The EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

350 (hex), 848 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP Interface object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------|-----|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 01 | Protocols Supported | UINT | X | — | |
| 02 | Connection Diagnostics | STRUCT | X | — | |
| | Max CIP IO Connections opened | UINT | | | Number of Class 1 connections opened since the last reset |
| | Current CIP IO Connections | UINT | | | Number of Class 1 connections currently opened |
| | Max CIP Explicit Connections opened | UINT | | | Number of Class 3 connections opened since the last reset |
| | Current CIP Explicit Connections | UINT | | | Number of Class 3 connections currently opened |
| | CIP Connections Opening Errors | UINT | | | Increments each time a Forward Open is not successful (Originator and Target) |
| | CIP Connections Timeout Errors | UINT | | | Increments when a connection times out (Originator and Target) |
| | Max EIP TCP Connections opened | UINT | | | Number of TCP connections (used for EIP, as client or server) opened since the last reset |
| | Current EIP TCP Connections | UINT | | | Number of TCP connections (used for EIP, as client or server) currently open |
| 03 | IO Messaging Diagnostics | STRUCT | X | X | |
| | IO Production Counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a Class 0/1 message is sent |
| | IO Consumption Counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a Class 0/1 message is received |
| | IO Production Send Errors Counter | UINT | | | Increments each time a Class 0/1 message is not sent |
| | IO Consumption Receive Errors Counter | UINT | | | Increments each time a consumption is received with a detected error |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------|-----|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 04 | Explicit Messaging Diagnostics | STRUCT | X | X | |
| | Class 3 Msg Send Counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a Class 3 message is sent (client and server) |
| | Class 3 Msg Receive Counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a Class 3 message is received (client and server) |
| | UCMM Msg Receive Counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a UCMM message is sent (client and server) |
| | UCMM Msg Receive Counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a UCMM message is received (client and server) |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Services

The EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|-------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X | Returns the value of all attributes. |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | — | X | Returns the value of the specified attribute. |
| 4C | 76 | Get_and_Clear | — | X | Returns and clears the values of all instance attributes. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics Object

Overview

The EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

351 (hex), 849 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object presents two instances:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

Attributes

EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | IO Status Table | STRUCT | X | — |
| | Size | UINT | | |
| | Status | ARRAY of UNINT | | |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | |

Services

The EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|-------|----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X | Returns the value of all attributes. |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X | Returns the value of the specified attribute. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

IO Connection Diagnostics Object

Overview

The IO Connection Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

352 (hex), 850 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The IO Connection Diagnostics object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1..256: instance (The instance number is the connection number in the configuration.)

Attributes

IO Connection Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 to 256 (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------|-----|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 01 | IO Communication Diagnostics | STRUCT | X | X | |
| | IO Production Counter | UDINT | | | Increments at each production |
| | IO Consumption Counter | UDINT | | | Increments at each consumption |
| | IO Production Send Errors Counter | UINT | | | Increments each time a production is not sent |
| | IO Consumption Receive Errors Counter | UINT | | | Increments each time a consumption is received with a detected error |
| | CIP Connection Timeout Errors | UINT | | | Increments when a connection times out |
| | CIP Connection Opening Errors | UINT | | | Increments each time a connection is unable to open |
| | CIP Connection State | UINT | | | State of the Connection Bit |
| | CIP Last Error General Status | UINT | | | General status of the last error detected on the connection |
| | CIP Last Error Extended Status | UINT | | | Extended status of the last error detected on the connection |
| | Input Communication Status | UINT | | | Communication status of the inputs (see table, below) |
| | Output Communication Status | UINT | | | Communication status of the outputs (see table, below) |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------|-----|-----|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 02 | Connection Diagnostics | STRUCT | X | X | |
| | Production Connection ID | UDINT | | | Connection ID for production |
| | Consumption Connection ID | UDINT | | | Connection ID for consumption |
| | Production RPI | UDINT | | | RPI for production |
| | Production API | UDINT | | | API for production |
| | Consumption RPI | UDINT | | | RPI for consumption |
| | Consumption API | UDINT | | | API for consumption |
| | Production Connection Parameters | UDINT | | | Connection parameters for production |
| | Consumption Connection Parameters | UDINT | | | Connection parameters for consumption |
| | Local IP | UDINT | | | — |
| | Local UDP Port | UINT | | | — |
| | Remote IP | UDINT | | | — |
| | Remote UDP Port | UINT | | | — |
| | Production Multicast IP | UDINT | | | Multicast IP used for production (or 0) |
| | Consumption Multicast IP | UDINT | | | Multicast IP used for consumption (or 0) |
| | Protocols Supported | UDINT | | | Protocol supported on the connection: 1 = EtherNet/IP |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

The following values describe the structure of the instance attributes: *CIP Connection State*, *Input Communication Status*, and *Output Communication Status*:

| Bit Number | Description | Values |
|------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 15...3 | <i>Reserved</i> | 0 |
| 2 | Idle | 0 = no idle notification 1 = idle notification |
| 1 | Consumption inhibited | 0 = consumption started 1 = no consumption |
| 0 | Production inhibited | 0 = production started 1 = no production |

Services

The EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|-------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X | Returns the value of all attributes. |
| 0E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | — | X | Returns the value of the specified attribute. |
| 4C | 76 | Get_and_Clear | — | X | Returns and clears the values of all instance attributes. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics Object

Overview

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

353 (hex), 851 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1...*N*: instance (*N*= maximum concurrent number of explicit connections)

Attributes

EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID hex | Description | Value | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|---------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | 1 | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | 0... <i>N</i> | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | |

Instance ID = 1 to *N*(instance attributes):

| Attribute ID hex | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------|-----|-----|------------------------------------|
| 01 | Originator connection ID | UDINT | X | — | Originator to target connection ID |
| 02 | Originator IP | UINT | X | — | |
| 03 | Originator TCP Port | UDINT | X | — | |
| 04 | Target connection ID | UDINT | X | — | Target to originator connection ID |
| 05 | Target IP | UDINT | X | — | |
| 06 | Target TCP Port | UDINT | X | — | |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

| Attribute ID hex | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|-------|-----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 07 | Msg Send Counter | UDINT | X | — | Incremented each time a Class 3 CIP message is sent on the connection |
| 08 | Msg Receive counter | UDINT | X | — | Increments each time a Class 3 CIP message is received on the connection |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Services

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object type:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|------------------------------------|-----|--------------------|-------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X | Returns the value of all attributes. |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List Object

Overview

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

Class ID

354 (hex), 852 (decimal)

Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1...*N*: instance

Attributes

EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | GET | SET |
|------------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| 01 | Revision | X | — |
| 02 | Max Instance | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | |

Instance ID = 1 to N (instance attributes):

| Attribute ID | Description | Type | GET | SET | Value |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 01 | Number of connections | UINT | X | — | Total number of opened explicit connections |
| 02 | Explicit Messaging Connections Diagnostic List | ARRAY of STRUCT | X | — | |
| | Originator connection ID | UDINT | | | O->T connection ID |
| | Originator IP | UINT | | | — |
| | Originator TCP port | UDINT | | | — |
| | Target connection ID | UDINT | | | T->O connection ID |
| | Target IP | UDINT | | | — |
| | Target TCP port | UDINT | | | — |
| | Msg Send counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a Class 3 CIP message is sent on the connection |
| Msg Receive counter | UDINT | | | Increments each time a Class 3 CIP message is received on the connection | |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Services

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

| Service ID | | Description | Class | Instance | Notes |
|------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------|-------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| hex | dec | | | | |
| 01 | 01 | Get_Attributes_All | X | — | Returns the value of all attributes. |
| 08 | 08 | Create | X | — | — |
| 09 | 09 | Delete | — | X | — |
| 4B | 75 | Explicit_Connections_Diagnostic_Read | — | X | — |
| X = supported — = not supported | | | | | |

Chapter 7

Online Action

Overview

The Ethernet communication module supports online actions that let you:

- display CIP objects for the communication module or a remote EtherNet/IP device
- view and edit port configuration parameters for the communication module or a remote EtherNet/IP device
- ping the communication module or a remote EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device to confirm it is active on the Ethernet network
- connect to a remote device and then:
 - view the remote device's default parameter settings
 - view the remote device's current parameter settings
 - edit and download to the remote device its editable parameter settings

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Accessing CIP Objects | 246 |
| Editing Port Configuration Properties for Remote EtherNet/IP Devices | 248 |
| Pinging a Network Device | 250 |
| Viewing and Editing Online Settings for a Remote Device | 252 |

Accessing CIP Objects

Overview

Use the **Module Information** page of the **Online Action** window to:

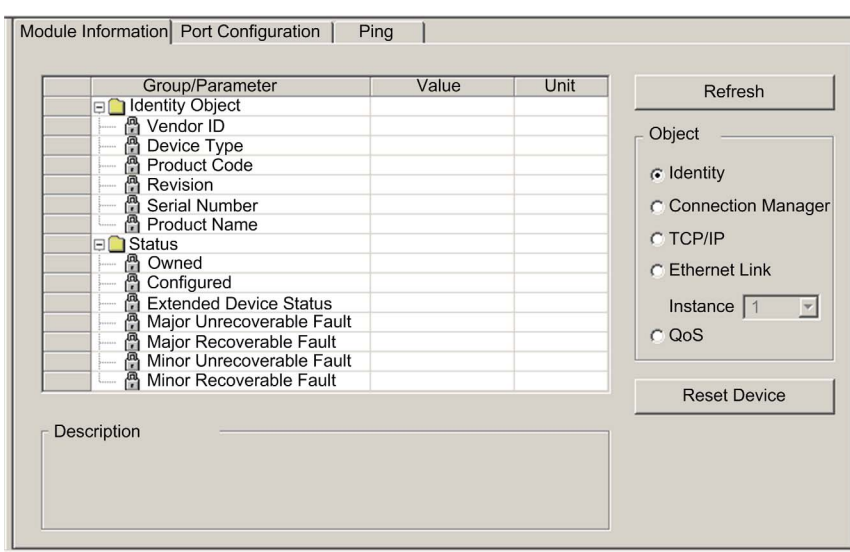
- retrieve and display current data describing the state of CIP objects for the selected communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device, and
- reset the selected communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device

NOTE: Before you can perform online actions for a communication module or remote device, connect its DTM to the physical module or device. To do this, select the module or device node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit → Connect**.

The appearance of this page, and the CIP object information you can retrieve, depend upon the operating mode of the Control Expert software:

| In this mode... | You can display data for these CIP objects... |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard mode | Identity object (<i>see page 213</i>) |
| Advanced mode (<i>see page 47</i>) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Identity object ● Connection Manager object (<i>see page 217</i>) ● TCP/IP Interface object (<i>see page 224</i>) ● Ethernet Link object (<i>see page 226</i>) ● QoS object (<i>see page 222</i>) |

The **Module Information** page looks like this:



Retrieve and Display CIP Object Data

To display CIP object data for an EtherNet/IP communication module or remote device:

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select a communication module. |
| 2 | Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select Device menu → Online Action . The Online Action window opens. |
| 3 | In the left pane of the Online Action window, select a communication module or EtherNet/IP device. |
| 4 | In the right pane, click on the Module Information tab to open that page. |
| 5 | <p>If Control Expert is operating in Advanced Mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select one of the following CIP objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Identity ○ Connection Manager ○ TCP/IP ○ Ethernet Link ○ QoS ● If you selected a multi-port module or device in step 3, above, select an Interface, or port, number <p>NOTE: If Control Expert is operating in Standard Mode, it will display data only for the CIP Identity object.</p> |
| 6 | Click the Refresh button to update the data displayed. |

Reset a Communication Module or Remote EtherNet/IP Device

To reset a communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select a communication module. |
| 2 | Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select Device menu → Online Action . The Online Action window opens. |
| 3 | In the left pane of the Online Action window, select a communication module or EtherNet/IP device. |
| 4 | In the right pane, click on the Module Information tab to open that page. |
| 5 | Click the Reset Device button. |

Editing Port Configuration Properties for Remote EtherNet/IP Devices

Overview

Use the **Port Configuration** page of the **Online Action** window to view and edit communication port properties for a remote EtherNet/IP device. Specifically, you can use this page to execute a:

- Get command to retrieve port configuration settings from a remote EtherNet/IP device
- Set command that writes all or selected edited values to the same remote EtherNet/IP device

Configuration edits transmitted from this page are sent as EtherNet/IP explicit messages and employ the **Address** and **Messaging** settings configured in the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging** window.

NOTE: Before you can perform online actions for a remote device, connect its DTM to the physical device. To do this, select the device node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **Port Configuration** page looks like this:

| Group/Parameter | Value | Unit |
|------------------------------------|---------------|------|
| General | | |
| ▶ Startup Configuration | | |
| ▶ DNS Enable | | |
| TCP/IP Parameters | | |
| ▶ Device IP Address | | |
| ▶ New IP Address | | |
| ▶ Gateway Address | | |
| ▶ Sub Network Mask | | |
| ▶ Primary DNS Server Address | | |
| ▶ Secondary DNS Server | | |
| ▶ Domain Name | | |
| Host Name | | |
| ▶ Name | | |
| Physical Interface | | |
| ▶ Get: Link Status | | |
| ▶ Get: Duplex Mode | | |
| ▶ Get: Negotiation Status | | |
| ▶ Get: Interface Speed | | Mbps |
| ▶ Set: 802.3 Link Auto-Negotiation | Disable | |
| ▶ Set: Forced Duplex Mode | Half Duplex | |
| ▶ Set: Forced Interface Speed | Indeterminate | Mbps |

Get Port Configuration Settings

To get settings from a remote EtherNet/IP device on the network:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module upstream of the remote EtherNet/IP device. |
| 2 | Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select Device menu → EtherNet/IP Explicit Message . The EtherNet/IP Explicit Message window opens. |
| 3 | In the EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging page, complete the Address section. Note: Port configuration explicit messages are sent as unconnected messages. |
| 4 | Return to the DTM Browser and again select the communication module upstream of the remote EtherNet/IP device. |
| 5 | Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select Device menu → Online Action . The Online Action window opens. |
| 6 | In the left pane of the Online Action window, select a remote EtherNet/IP device. |
| 7 | In the right pane, click on the Port Configuration tab to open that page. |
| 8 | If the remote device consists of more than one port, select the port number in the Physical Interface Instance list. |
| 9 | In the Port Configuration page, click the Get Values from Device button. The table displays the returned values of the communication properties for the selected remote device and port. |

Edit and Set Port Configuration Settings

To edit and set port configuration settings that were retrieved using the above-described **Get Port Configuration Settings** process:

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Double-click the left mouse button in the Value cell for the parameter you want to edit. The cell becomes editable. Note: The page also displays a Description of the selected parameter. |
| 2 | Type in, or select, the new value. |
| 3 | Repeat steps 1 - 2 for each parameter you want to edit. |
| 4 | Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Click the Set All Values to Device to write every value to the remote device - or - ● if you edited parameters for only one part, or group, of the collection of remote device values, then: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ in the Set Part of Values area, select one property group, then ○ click the Set Values to Device button <p>Control Expert sends the property value edits to the remote device via an EtherNet/IP explicit message, and displays the results in the Description area.</p> |

Pinging a Network Device

Overview

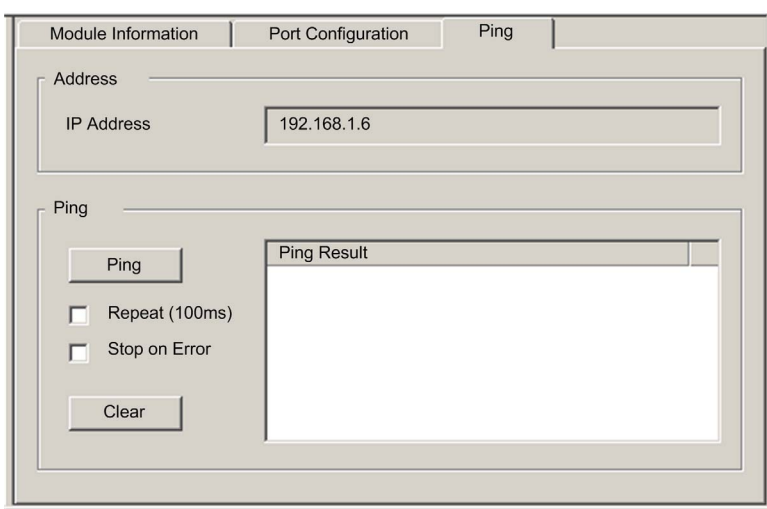
Use the Control Expert ping function to send an ICMP echo request to a target Ethernet device to determine:

- if the target device is present, and if so
- the elapsed time to receive an echo response from the target device

The target device is identified by its IP address setting. Control Expert will verify that the target address is not a:

- loopback address (127.000.000.000 to 127.255.255.255)
- multicast address (224.000.000.000 to 239.255.255.255)
- reserved address (240.000.000.000 to 255.255.255.255)
- broadcast address

The ping function can be performed in the **Ping** page of the **Online Action** window:



Pinging a Network Device

To ping a network device:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module upstream of the remote EtherNet/IP device you want to ping. |
| 2 | Click the right mouse button and select Device Menu > → Online Action in the pop-up menu. The Online Action window opens. |
| 3 | In the Online Action window, select the device you want to ping. The window displays pages containing online information for the selected device. NOTE: The specific collection of displayed pages depends on the type of device selected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the communication module ● a remote EtherNet/IP device ● a remote Modbus TCP device |
| 4 | Select the Ping page. To send... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● a single ping, de-select the Repeat checkbox ● a series of pings—1 every 100 ms—select Repeat checkbox |
| 5 | (Optional) Select Stop on Error to stop pinging an unsuccessful communication. |
| 6 | Click Ping once to begin pinging. |
| 7 | Click Ping a second time to stop repeated pinging, where no error has been detected. |
| 8 | The Ping Result box displays the ping outcome. Click Clear to empty the Ping Result box. |

Viewing and Editing Online Settings for a Remote Device

Introduction

Use the **Online Parameters** window to:

- view the remote device's default parameter settings
- view the remote device's current parameter settings
- edit and download to the remote device its editable parameter settings

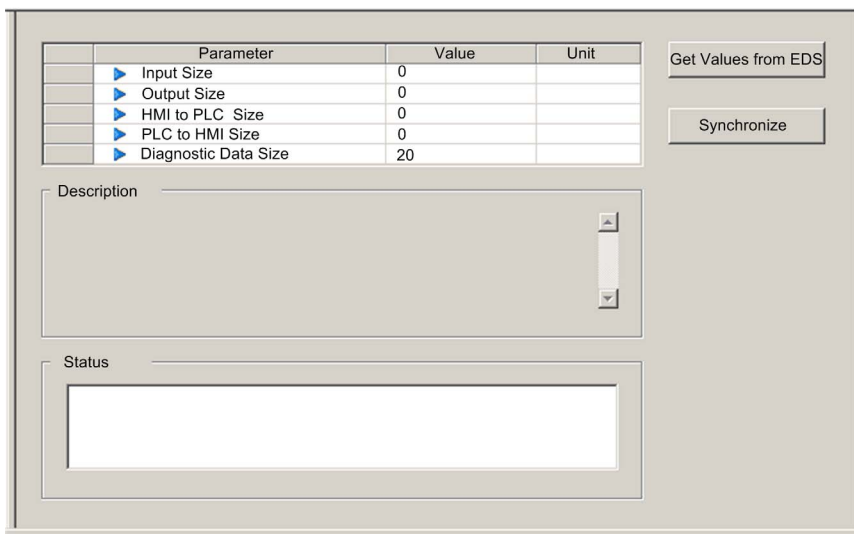
Parameter setting edits transmitted from this page are sent as EtherNet/IP explicit messages and employ the **Address** and **Messaging** settings configured in the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging** window.


NOTE: Before you can view and edit online settings for a remote device, connect its DTM file to the physical device. To do this, select the device node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

To open the **Online Parameters** window, follow these steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the node for a remote device. |
| 2 | Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select Device menu → Online Parameters . The Online Parameters window opens for the selected remote device. |
| 3 | <p>In the left pane of the Online Parameters window, select a connection node. Control Expert displays the parameters relating to the selected connection in the right pane.</p> <p>NOTE: The list of parameters displayed in the Online Parameters window depends upon:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the device selected in the DTM Browser, and • the connection selected in the left pane of the Online Parameters window |

An example of the **Online Parameters** window—in this case for the STB NIC 2212 remote network interface device—looks like this:



Read-only parameters are identified by a locked icon  .

Editable parameters are identified by a blue arrowhead  .

Displaying Default Parameter Settings

To view the default parameter settings for the remote device, click the **Get Values from EDS** button. Control Expert reads the default device values from its EDS file and displays them on-screen.

Displaying Online Parameter Settings

To view the current parameter settings for the remote device, follow these steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | With a connection selected in the left pane, click the Synchronize button. The Synchronize Action message box opens. |
| 2 | In the message box, select Read values from the device , then click OK . The message box closes. In the Online Parameters window: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the Status field displays the results of the read transaction the parameter list displays current values |

Editing Online Parameter Settings

To edit parameter settings for the remote device, follow these steps:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | With a connection selected in the left pane, display either: <ul style="list-style-type: none">● default device settings, or● current device settings |
| 2 | In the Value column, type in or select a new value for each setting you want to edit. NOTE: When you select a parameter, the Description area displays an explanation of the parameter and its available settings. |
| 3 | Click the Synchronize button. The Synchronize Action message box opens. |
| 4 | In the message box, select Write data to the device , then click OK . The message box closes. In the Online Parameters window, the Status field displays the results of the write transaction. |

Chapter 8

Explicit Messaging

Overview

The Ethernet communication module supports explicit messaging via the EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP protocols.

NOTE: A single Control Expert application can contain more than 16 explicit messaging blocks, but only 16 explicit messaging blocks can be active at the same time.

This chapter describes how to use both Control Expert function block logic and the Control Expert interface to send explicit messages.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

| Section | Topic | Page |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 8.1 | Explicit Messaging Using the MBP_MSTR Block | 256 |
| 8.2 | EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR | 258 |
| 8.3 | Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR | 280 |
| 8.4 | Explicit Messaging via the Control Expert GUI | 289 |

Section 8.1

Explicit Messaging Using the MBP_MSTR Block

Configuring Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR

Overview

You can use the `MBP_MSTR` function block to configure both Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP connected and unconnected explicit messages.

The operation begins when the input to the `EN` pin is turned ON. The operation ends if the `ABORT` pin is turned ON, or if the `EN` pin is turned OFF.

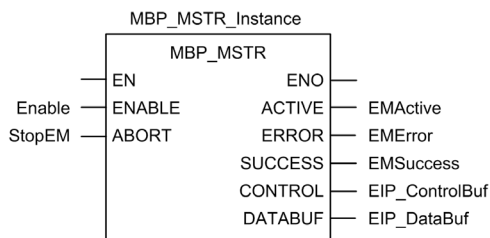
The `CONTROL` and `DATABUF` output parameters define the operation.

NOTE: The structure and content of the `CONTROL` and `DATABUF` output parameters differ for explicit messages configured using the EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP protocols. Refer to the topics [Configuring the Control Parameter for EtherNet/IP](#) and [Configuring the Control Parameter for Modbus TCP](#) for instructions on how to configure these parameters for each protocol.

The `ACTIVE` output turns ON during operation; the `ERROR` output turns ON if the operation aborts without success; the `SUCCESS` output turns ON at the successful completion of the operation.

`EN` and `ENO` can be configured as additional parameters.

Representation in FBD



Input Parameters

| Parameter | Data type | Description |
|-----------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ENABLE | BOOL | When ON, the explicit message operation (specified in the first element of the <code>CONTROL</code> pin) is executing. |
| ABORT | BOOL | When ON, the operation is aborted. |

Output Parameters

| Parameter | Data type | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ACTIVE | BOOL | ON when the operation is active. OFF at all other times. |
| ERROR | BOOL | ON when the operation is aborted without success. OFF before operation, during operation, and if operation succeeds. |
| SUCCESS | BOOL | ON when the operation concludes successfully. OFF before operation, during operation, and if operation does not conclude successfully. |
| CONTROL ¹ | WORD | This parameter contains the control block. The first element contains a code describing the operation to be performed. The content of the control block depends on the operation. The structure of the control block depends on the protocol (EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP). Note: Assign this parameter to a located variable. |
| DATABUF ¹ | WORD | This parameter contains the data buffer. For operations that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● provide data — e.g., a write operation — this parameter is the data source ● receive data — e.g., a read operation — this parameter is the data destination Note: Assign this parameter to a located variable. |
| <p>1. Refer to the topics Configuring the Control Block for EtherNet/IP and Configuring the Control Block for Modbus TCP for instructions on how to configure these parameters for the EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP communication protocols.</p> | | |

Section 8.2

EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR

Overview

This section shows you how to configure the MBP_MSTR function block for EtherNet/IP explicit messages.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|------------------------------------------------|------|
| EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Services | 259 |
| Configuring the CONTROL and DATABUF Parameters | 261 |
| MBP_MSTR Example: Get_Attributes_Single | 264 |
| MBP_MSTR Example – Read Modbus Object | 269 |
| MBP_MSTR Example – Write Modbus Object | 274 |

EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Services

Overview

Every EtherNet/IP explicit message performs a service. Each service is associated with a service code (or number). You will need to identify the explicit messaging service by its name, decimal number, or hexadecimal number.

You can execute EtherNet/IP explicit messages using either a Control Expert `MBP_MSTR` function block or the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool's **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Window**.

NOTE: Configuration edits made to an Ethernet communication module from the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool's EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Window are not saved to the operating parameters stored in the CPU and, therefore, are not sent by the CPU to the module on startup.

You can use Control Expert to construct a request that executes any service supported by the target device that is compliant with the EtherNet/IP protocol.

Services

The services supported by Control Expert include the following standard explicit messaging services:

| Service Code | | Description | Available in... | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Hex | Dec | | MBP_MSTR block | Control Expert GUI |
| 1 | 1 | Get_Attributes_All | X | X |
| 2 | 2 | Set_Attributes_All | X | X |
| 3 | 3 | Get_Attribute_List | X | — |
| 4 | 4 | Set_Attribute_List | X | — |
| 5 | 5 | Reset | X | X |
| 6 | 6 | Start | X | X |
| 7 | 7 | Stop | X | X |
| 8 | 8 | Create | X | X |
| 9 | 9 | Delete | X | X |
| A | 10 | Multiple_Service_Packet | X | — |
| D | 13 | Apply_Attributes | X | X |
| E | 14 | Get_Attribute_Single | X | X |
| 10 | 16 | Set_Attribute_Single | X | X |
| 11 | 17 | Find_Next_Object_Instance | X | X |
| 14 | 20 | Detected Error Response (DeviceNet only) | — | — |
| "X" = the service is available. "—" = the service is not available. | | | | |

| Service Code | | Description | Available in... | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Hex | Dec | | MBP_MSTR block | Control Expert GUI |
| 15 | 21 | Restore | X | X |
| 16 | 22 | Save | X | X |
| 17 | 23 | No Operation (NOP) | X | X |
| 18 | 24 | Get_Member | X | X |
| 19 | 25 | Set_Member | X | X |
| 1A | 26 | Insert_Member | X | X |
| 1B | 27 | Remove_Member | X | X |
| 1C | 28 | GroupSync | X | — |
| "X" = the service is available. "—" = the service is not available. | | | | |

Configuring the CONTROL and DATABUF Parameters

Overview

The CONTROL and DATABUF output parameters define the operation performed by the MBP_MSTR function block. For the EtherNet/IP protocol, the structure of the CONTROL and DATABUF output parameters remains the same for every explicit messaging service (*see page 259*).

Configuring the Control Parameter

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL[0] | Operation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 14 = unconnected 270 = connected |
| CONTROL[1] | Detected error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only). |
| CONTROL[2] | Data buffer length | Data buffer length, in words |
| CONTROL[3] | Response offset | Offset for the beginning of the response in the data buffer, in 16-bit words Note: To avoid overwriting the request, confirm that the response offset value is greater than the request length CONTROL[7]. |
| CONTROL[4] | Slot | High byte = slot location on backplane Low byte = 0 (not used) |
| CONTROL[5] ¹ | IP address | High byte = byte 4 of the IP address (MSB) |
| | | Low byte = byte 3 of the IP address |
| CONTROL[6] ¹ | | High byte = byte 2 of the IP address |
| | | Low byte = byte 1 of the IP address (LSB) |
| CONTROL[7] | Request length | Length of the CIP request, in bytes |
| CONTROL[8] | Response length | Length of the response received, in bytes Read only—set after completion |
| <p>1. For example, the Control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.6 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 6.</p> | | |

Configuring the Data Buffer

The data buffer varies in size. It consists of contiguous registers that include—in sequence—both the CIP request and the CIP response. To avoid overwriting the request, confirm that the data buffer is large enough to simultaneously contain both the request and response data.

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data Buffer: Variable size: set in CONTROL [2] | CIP Request: Request size: set in CONTROL [7] |
| | CIP Response: Starting position: set in CONTROL [3] Response size: reported in CONTROL [8] NOTE: If the response offset is smaller than the request size, the response data overwrites part of the request. |

The format of the data buffer’s CIP request and CIP response is described, below.

NOTE: Structure both the request and response in little endian order.

Request:

| Byte offset | Field | Data type | Description |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0 | Service | Byte | Service of the explicit message |
| 1 | Request_Path_Size | Byte | The number of words in the Request_Path field |
| 2 | Request_Path | Padded EPATH | This byte array describes the path of the request—including class ID, instance ID, etc.—for this transaction |
| ... | Request_Data | Byte array | Service specific data to be delivered in the explicit message request—if none, this field is empty |

Response:

| Byte offset | Field | Data type | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0 | Reply Service | Byte | Service of the explicit message + 16#80 |
| 1 | Reserved | Byte | 0 |
| 2 | General Status | Byte | EtherNet/IP General Status <i>(see page 361)</i> |
| 3 | Size of Additional Status | Byte | Additional Status array size—in words |
| 4 | Additional Status | Word array | Additional status ¹ |
| ... | Response Data | Byte array | Response data from request, or additional detected error data if General Status indicates a detected error |
| <p>1. Refer to <i>The CIP Networks Library, Volume 1, Common Industrial Protocol</i> at section 3-5.6 <i>Connection Manager Object Instance Detected Error Codes</i>,</p> | | | |

MBP_MSTR Example: Get_Attributes_Single

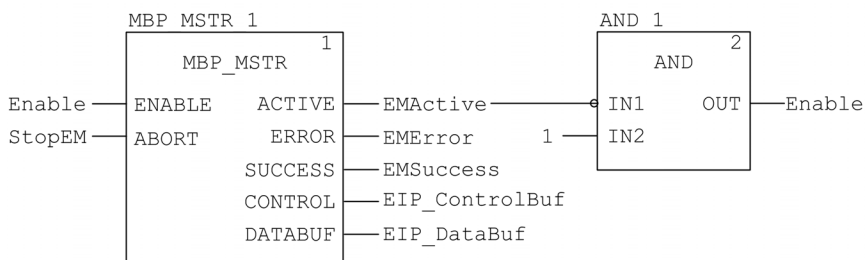
Overview

The following unconnected explicit messaging example shows you how to use the MBP_MSTR function block to retrieve diagnostic information for an STB island from an STB NIC 2212 network interface module, by using the Get_Attributes_Single service.

You can perform the same explicit messaging service using the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Window** of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool (*see page 290*).

Implementing the MBP_MSTR Function Block

To implement the MBP_MSTR function block, you need to create and assign variables, then connect it to an AND block. In the following example, the logic will continuously send an explicit message upon receiving notice of success:



Input Variables

Variables need to be created and assigned to input pins. For the purpose of this example, variables have been created — and named — as described below. (You can use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.)

| Input Pin | Variable | Data Type |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| ENABLE | Enable | BOOL |
| ABORT | StopEM | BOOL |

Output Variables

Variables also need to be created and assigned to output pins. (The names assigned to output variables apply only to this example, and can be changed in your explicit messaging configurations.)

| Output Pin | Variable | Data Type |
|------------|----------------|--------------------|
| ACTIVE | EMActive | BOOL |
| ERROR | EMError | BOOL |
| SUCCESS | EMSuccess | BOOL |
| CONTROL | EIP_ControlBuf | Array of 10 WORDS |
| DATABUF | EIP_DataBuf | Array of 100 WORDS |

NOTE: To simplify configuration, you can assign the `CONTROL` and `DATABUF` output pins to a byte array consisting of located variables. When configured in this manner, you will not need to be aware of the location of data within a word (for example, high versus low byte, and big or little endian format).

Control Array

The control array parameter (`EIP_ControlBuf`) consists of 9 contiguous words. You need to configure only some control words; other control words are read-only and are written to by the operation. In this example, the control array defines the operation as an unconnected explicit message, and identifies the target device:

| Register | Description | Configure | Setting (hex) |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| CONTROL[0] | Operation: High byte = <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 00 (unconnected), or ● 01 (connected) Low byte = 0E (CIP explicit message) | Yes | 16#000E (unconnected) |
| CONTROL[1] | Detected error status: read-only (written by operation) | No | 16#0000 |
| CONTROL[2] | Data buffer length = 100 words | Yes | 16#0064 |
| CONTROL[3] | Response offset: offset — in words — for the beginning of the explicit message response in the databuffer | Yes | 16#0004 |
| CONTROL[4] | High byte = slot location of the communication module in the backplane Low byte = 0 (not used) | Yes | 16#0400 |

| Register | Description | Configure | Setting (hex) |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| CONTROL[5] ¹ | IP address of the Ethernet communication module: High byte = byte 4 of the IP address Low byte = byte 3 of the IP address | Yes | 16#C0A8 |
| CONTROL[6] ¹ | IP address of the Ethernet communication module: High byte = byte 2 of the IP address Low byte = byte 1 of the IP address | Yes | 16#0106 |
| CONTROL[7] | CIP request length (in bytes) | Yes | 16#0008 |
| CONTROL[8] | Length of received response (written by operation) | No | 16#0000 |

1. In this example, the control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.6 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 6.

CIP Request

The CIP request is located at the beginning of the databuffer and is followed by the CIP response. In this example, the CIP request calls for the return of a single attribute value (diagnostic data), and describes the request path through the target device's object structure leading to the target attribute:

| Request word | High byte | | Low byte | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------|
| | Description | Value (hex) | Description | Value (hex) |
| 1 | Request path size (in words) | 16#03 | EM Service: Get_Attributes_Single | 16#0E |
| 2 | Request path: class assembly object | 16#04 | Request path: logical class segment | 16#20 |
| 3 | Request path: instance | 16#64 | Request path: logical instance segment | 16#24 |
| 4 | Request path: attribute | 16#03 | Request path: logical attribute segment | 16#30 |

Combining the high and low bytes, above, the CIP request would look like this:

| Request word | Value |
|--------------|---------|
| 1 | 16#030E |
| 2 | 16#0420 |
| 3 | 16#6424 |
| 4 | 16#0330 |

Viewing the Response

Use a Control Expert Animation table to display the EIP_DataBuf variable array. Note that the EIP_DataBuf variable array consists of the entire data buffer, which includes the:

- CIP request (4 words) located in EIP_DataBuf(1-4)
- CIP service type (1 word) located in EIP_DataBuf(5)
- CIP request status (1 word) located in EIP_DataBuf(6)
- CIP response (in this case, 10 words) located in EIP_DataBuf(7-16)

To display the CIP response, follow these steps:

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In Control Expert, select Tools → Project Browser to open the Project Browser . | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | In the Project Browser , right-click Animation Tables → New Animation Table . Result: A new animation table opens. | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | In the New Animation Table dialog, edit the following values: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Name</td> <td>Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Functional Mode</td> <td>Accept the default <None>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Comment</td> <td>Leave blank.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Number of animated characters</td> <td>Type 100, representing the size of the data buffer in words.</td> </tr> </table> | Name | Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf . | Functional Mode | Accept the default <None> . | Comment | Leave blank. | Number of animated characters | Type 100 , representing the size of the data buffer in words. |
| Name | Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf . | | | | | | | | |
| Functional Mode | Accept the default <None> . | | | | | | | | |
| Comment | Leave blank. | | | | | | | | |
| Number of animated characters | Type 100 , representing the size of the data buffer in words. | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | The completed dialog looks like this: <div> </div> <p>Click OK to close the dialog.</p> | | | | | | | | |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|------|---------|-------------|--|---------------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|
| 5 | In the animation table's Name column, type in the name of the variable assigned to the databuffer: EIP_DataBuf and press Enter . The animation table displays the EIP_DataBuf variable. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Expand the EIP_DataBuf variable to display its word array, where you can view the CIP response at words EIP_DataBuf(7-16): <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf</td> <td></td> <td>ARRAY(0...99)</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[0]</td> <td>16#030E</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[1]</td> <td>16#0420</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[2]</td> <td>16#6424</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[3]</td> <td>16#0330</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[4]</td> <td>16#008E</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[5]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[6]</td> <td>16#10A0</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[7]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[8]</td> <td>16#000F</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[9]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[10]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[11]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[12]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[13]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[14]</td> <td>16#000F</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[15]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Note: Each word presents 2 bytes of data in little endian format, where the least significant byte is stored in the smallest memory address. For example, '0E' in EIP_DataBuf[0] is the low byte, and '03' is the high byte.</p> | Name | Value | Type | Comment | EIP_DataBuf | | ARRAY(0...99) | | EIP_DataBuf[0] | 16#030E | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[1] | 16#0420 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[2] | 16#6424 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[3] | 16#0330 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[4] | 16#008E | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[5] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[6] | 16#10A0 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[7] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[8] | 16#000F | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[9] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[10] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[11] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[12] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[13] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[14] | 16#000F | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[15] | 16#0000 | WORD | |
| Name | Value | Type | Comment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf | | ARRAY(0...99) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[0] | 16#030E | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[1] | 16#0420 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[2] | 16#6424 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[3] | 16#0330 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[4] | 16#008E | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[5] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[6] | 16#10A0 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[7] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[8] | 16#000F | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[9] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[10] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[11] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[12] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[13] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[14] | 16#000F | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[15] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

MBP_MSTR Example – Read Modbus Object

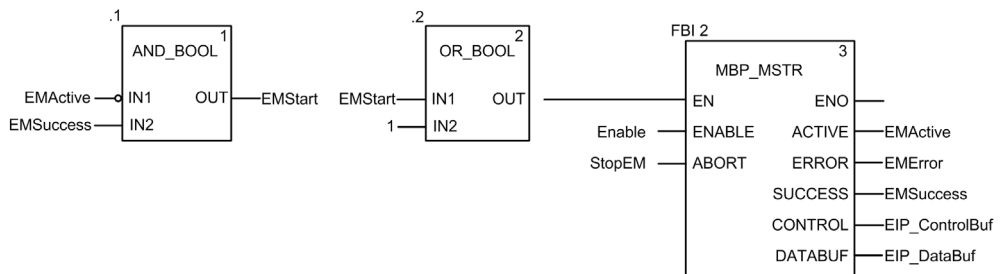
Overview

The following unconnected explicit messaging example shows you how to use the `MBP_MSTR` function block to retrieve data from a remote device—for example a 140 NOC 771 01, a TSX ETC 101, or a BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module at IP address 192.168.1.12 using the Read_Holding_Registers service of the Modbus object (*see page 220*).

You can perform the same explicit messaging service using the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Window** of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool (*see page 290*).

Implementing the MBP_MSTR Function Block

To implement the `MBP_MSTR` function block, you need to create and assign variables, and connect it to an `OR` block. In the following example, the logic will continuously send an explicit message upon receiving notice of success or detected error.



Input Variables

Variables need to be created and assigned to input pins. For the purpose of this example, variables have been created and named as described below. (You can use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.)

| Input Pin | Variable | Data Type |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| ENABLE | Enable | BOOL |
| ABORT | StopEM | BOOL |

Output Variables

Variables also need to be created and assigned to output pins. (The names assigned to output variables apply only to this example, and can be changed in your explicit messaging configurations.)

| Output Pin | Variable | Data Type |
|------------|----------------|------------------|
| ACTIVE | EMActive | BOOL |
| ERROR | EMError | BOOL |
| SUCCESS | EMSuccess | BOOL |
| CONTROL | EIP_ControlBuf | Array of 10 INT |
| DATABUF | EIP_DataBuf | Array of 100 INT |

NOTE: To simplify configuration, you can assign the `CONTROL` and `DATABUF` output pins to a byte array consisting of located variables. When configured in this manner, you will not need to be aware of the location of data within a word (for example, high versus low byte, and big or little endian format).

Control Array

The control array parameter (`EIP_ControlBuf`) consists of 9 contiguous words. You need to configure only some control words; other control words are read-only and are written to by the operation. In this example, the control array defines the operation as an unconnected explicit message, and identifies the target device:

| Register | Description | Configure | Setting (hex) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| CONTROL[0] | Operation: High byte = 00 (unconnected) Low byte = 0E (CIP explicit message) | Yes | 16#000E |
| CONTROL[1] | Error status: read-only (written by operation) | No | 16#0000 |
| CONTROL[2] | Data buffer length = 100 INT | Yes | 16#0064 |
| CONTROL[3] | Response offset: offset — in words — for the beginning of the explicit message response in the databuffer | Yes | 16#0005 |
| CONTROL[4] | High byte = slot location of the communication module in the backplane Low byte = 00 (not used) | Yes | 16#0400 |
| CONTROL[5] ¹ | IP address of the Ethernet communication module: High byte = IP address byte 4 (192) Low byte = IP address byte 3 (168) | Yes | 16#C0A8 |
| CONTROL[6] ¹ | IP address of the Ethernet communication module: High byte = IP address byte 2 (001) Low byte = IP address byte 1 (012) | Yes | 16#010C |

| Register | Description | Configure | Setting (hex) |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| CONTROL [7] | CIP request length (in bytes) | Yes | 16#000A |
| CONTROL [8] | Length of received response (written by operation) | No | 16#0000 |

1. In this example, the control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.12 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 12.

CIP Request

The CIP request is located at the beginning of the databuffer and is followed by the CIP response. In this example, the CIP request calls for the return of a 5 contiguous word values, and describes the request path through the target device's object structure leading to the target attribute. The values (decimal) to be returned are 11, 22, 33, 44 and 55:

| Request word | High byte | | Low byte | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| | Description | Value (hex) | Description | Value (hex) |
| 1 | Request path size (in words) | 16#02 | EM Service: Read_Holding_Register | 16#4E |
| 2 | Request path: class assembly object (Modbus Object) | 16#44 | Request path: logical class segment (indicates an 8-bit object) | 16#20 |
| 3 | Request path: instance | 16#01 | Request path: logical instance segment (indicates an 8-bit instance) | 16#24 |
| 4 | First word to read (not used) | 16#00 | First word to read: value + %MW1 (i.e. start at zero based second word) | 16#02 |
| 5 | Number of Words to Read (not used) | 16#00 | Number of Words to Read: 5 | 16#05 |
| 6 | Service Code + response bit (read-only) | 16#00 | Response = CE (read-only) | 16#00 |
| 7 | Service response (not used) | 16#00 | Service response: 0=request did not succeed, 1=success (read only)) | 16#00 |
| 8...12 | Response words 1...5 (read only) | 16#00 | Response words 1...5 (read only) | 16#00 |

Combining the high and low bytes, above, the CIP request would look like this:

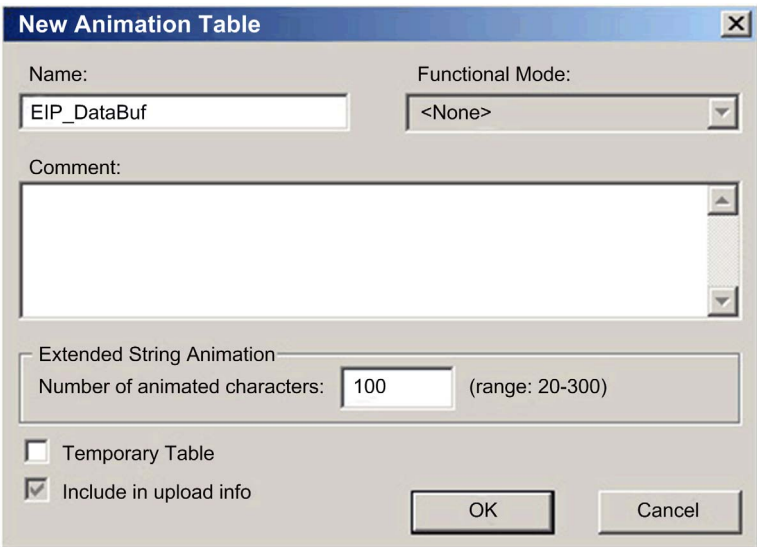
| Request word | Value |
|--------------|---------|
| 1 | 16#024E |
| 2 | 16#4420 |
| 3 | 16#0124 |
| 4 | 16#0002 |
| 5 | 16#0005 |
| 6...12 | 16#0000 |

Viewing the Response

Use a Control Expert Animation table to display the EIP_DataBuf variable array. Note that the EIP_DataBuf variable array consists of the entire data buffer, which includes the:

- CIP request (5 words) located in EIP_DataBuf(0-4)
- CIP service type (1 word) located in EIP_DataBuf(5)
- CIP request status (1 word) located in EIP_DataBuf(6)
- CIP response (in this case, 10 words) located in EIP_DataBuf(7-11)

To display the CIP response, follow these steps:

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In Control Expert, select Tools → Project Browser to open the Project Browser . | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | In the Project Browser , right-click Animation Tables → New Animation Table . Result: A new animation table opens. | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | In the New Animation Table dialog, edit the following values: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Name</td> <td>Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Functional Mode</td> <td>Accept the default <None>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Comment</td> <td>Leave blank.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Number of animated characters</td> <td>Type 100, representing the size of the data buffer in words.</td> </tr> </table> | Name | Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf . | Functional Mode | Accept the default <None> . | Comment | Leave blank. | Number of animated characters | Type 100 , representing the size of the data buffer in words. |
| Name | Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf . | | | | | | | | |
| Functional Mode | Accept the default <None> . | | | | | | | | |
| Comment | Leave blank. | | | | | | | | |
| Number of animated characters | Type 100 , representing the size of the data buffer in words. | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | <p>The completed dialog looks like this:</p>  <p>Click OK to close the dialog.</p> | | | | | | | | |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|------|---------|-------------|--|---------------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|
| 5 | In the animation table's Name column, type in the name of the variable assigned to the databuffer: EIP_DataBuf and press Enter . The animation table displays the EIP_DataBuf variable. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Expand the EIP_DataBuf variable to display its word array, where you can view the CIP response at words EIP_DataBuf(7-16): <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf</td> <td></td> <td>ARRAY(0...99)</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[0]</td> <td>16#024E</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[1]</td> <td>16#4420</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[2]</td> <td>16#0124</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[3]</td> <td>16#0002</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[4]</td> <td>16#0005</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[5]</td> <td>16#00CE</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[6]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[7]</td> <td>16#000B</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[8]</td> <td>16#0016</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[9]</td> <td>16#0021</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[10]</td> <td>16#002C</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[11]</td> <td>16#0037</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[12]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[13]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[14]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIP_DataBuf[15]</td> <td>16#0000</td> <td>WORD</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Note: Each word presents 2 bytes of data in little endian format, where the least significant byte is stored in the smallest memory address. For example, '4E' in EIP_DataBuf[0] is the low byte, and '02' is the high byte.</p> | Name | Value | Type | Comment | EIP_DataBuf | | ARRAY(0...99) | | EIP_DataBuf[0] | 16#024E | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[1] | 16#4420 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[2] | 16#0124 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[3] | 16#0002 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[4] | 16#0005 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[5] | 16#00CE | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[6] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[7] | 16#000B | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[8] | 16#0016 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[9] | 16#0021 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[10] | 16#002C | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[11] | 16#0037 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[12] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[13] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[14] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[15] | 16#0000 | WORD | |
| Name | Value | Type | Comment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf | | ARRAY(0...99) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[0] | 16#024E | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[1] | 16#4420 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[2] | 16#0124 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[3] | 16#0002 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[4] | 16#0005 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[5] | 16#00CE | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[6] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[7] | 16#000B | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[8] | 16#0016 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[9] | 16#0021 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[10] | 16#002C | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[11] | 16#0037 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[12] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[13] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[14] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[15] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

MBP_MSTR Example – Write Modbus Object

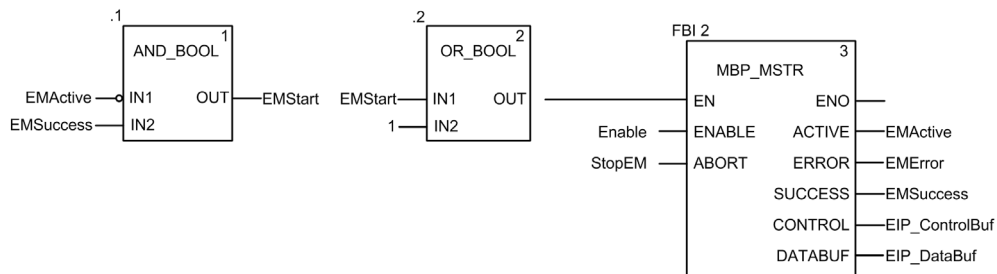
Overview

The following unconnected explicit messaging example shows you how to use the MBP_MSTR function block to write data to a remote device, for example a 140 NOC 771 01, a TSX ETC 101, or a BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module at IP address 192.168.1.12 using the Write_Holding_Registers service of the Modbus object (*see page 220*).

You can perform the same explicit messaging service using the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Window** of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool (*see page 290*).

Implementing the MBP_MSTR Function Block

To implement the MBP_MSTR function block, you need to create and assign variables, and connect it to an OR block. In the following example, the logic will continuously send an explicit message upon receiving notice of success or detected error.



Input Variables

Variables need to be created and assigned to input pins. For the purpose of this example, variables have been created — and named — as described below. (You can use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.)

| Input Pin | Variable | Data Type |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| ENABLE | Enable | BOOL |
| ABORT | StopEM | BOOL |

Output Variables

Variables also need to be created and assigned to output pins. (The names assigned to output variables apply only to this example, and can be changed in your explicit messaging configurations.)

| Output Pin | Variable | Data Type |
|------------|----------------|------------------|
| ACTIVE | EMActive | BOOL |
| ERROR | EMError | BOOL |
| SUCCESS | EMSuccess | BOOL |
| CONTROL | EIP_ControlBuf | Array of 10 INT |
| DATABUF | EIP_DataBuf | Array of 100 INT |

NOTE: To simplify configuration, you can assign the `CONTROL` and `DATABUF` output pins to a byte array consisting of located variables. When configured in this manner, you will not need to be aware of the location of data within a word (for example, high versus low byte, and big or little endian format).

Control Array

The control array parameter (`EIP_ControlBuf`) consists of 9 contiguous words. You need to configure only some control words; other control words are read-only and are written to by the operation. In this example, the control array defines the operation as an unconnected explicit message, and identifies the target device:

| Register | Description | Configure | Setting (hex) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| CONTROL[0] | Operation: High byte = 00 (unconnected) Low byte = 0E (CIP explicit message) | Yes | 16#000E |
| CONTROL[1] | Error status: read-only (written by operation) | No | 16#0000 |
| CONTROL[2] | Data buffer length = 20 (words) | Yes | 16#0014 |
| CONTROL[3] | Response offset: offset—in words (10)—for the beginning of the explicit message response in the databuffer | Yes | 16#000A |
| CONTROL[4] | High byte = slot location (4) of the communication module in the backplane Low byte = 00 (not used) | Yes | 16#0400 |
| CONTROL[5] ¹ | IP address of the Ethernet communication module: High byte = IP address byte 4 (192) Low byte = IP address byte 3 (168) | Yes | 16#C0A8 |
| CONTROL[6] ¹ | IP address of the Ethernet communication module: High byte = IP address byte 2 (001) Low byte = IP address byte 1 (012) | Yes | 16#010C |

| Register | Description | Configure | Setting (hex) |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| CONTROL [7] | CIP request length (20) in bytes | Yes | 16#0014 |
| CONTROL [8] | Length of received response (written by operation) | No | 16#0000 |

1. In this example, the control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.12 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 12.

CIP Request

The CIP request is located at the beginning of the databuffer and is followed by the CIP response. In this example, the CIP request calls for the writing of 5 contiguous words beginning at position 2, and describes the request path through the target device's object structure leading to the target attribute. The values to be written in sequence are 111, 222, 333, 444, and 555:

| Request word | High byte | | Low byte | |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| | Description | Value (hex) | Description | Value (hex) |
| 1 | Request path size (in words) | 16#02 | EM Service: Write_Holding_Register | 16#50 |
| 2 | Request path: class assembly object (Modbus Object) | 16#44 | Request path: logical class segment (indicates an 8-bit object) | 16#20 |
| 3 | Request path: instance | 16#01 | Request path: logical instance segment (indicates an 8-bit instance) | 16#24 |
| 4 | First word to write (not used) | 16#00 | First word to write: value + %MW1 (i.e. start at zero based second word) | 16#02 |
| 5 | Number of words to write | 16#00 | Number of words to write: 5 | 16#05 |
| 6 | Data words 1 | 16#00 | Data words 1 | 16#6F |
| 7 | Data words 2 | 16#00 | Data words 2 | 16#DE |
| 8 | Data words 3 | 16#01 | Data words 3 | 16#4D |
| 9 | Data words 4 | 16#01 | Data words 4 | 16#BC |
| 10 | Data words 5 | 16#02 | Data words 5 | 16#2B |
| 11 | Service Code + response bit (read-only) | 16#00 | Service Code + response bit (read-only) response = D0 | 16#000 |
| 12 | Service response (read only) | 16#00 | Service response (read only) success = 0 | 16#00 |
| 13 | Location of first word to write response (read only) | 16#00 | Location of first word to write response (read only) | 16#00 |
| 14 | Number of words to write response (read only) | 16#00 | Number of words to write response (read only) | 16#00 |

Combining the high and low bytes, above, the CIP request would look like this:

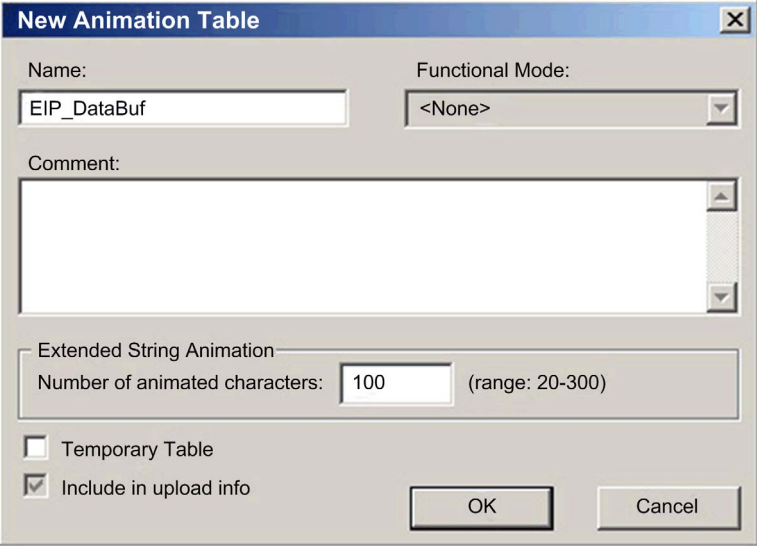
| Request word | Value |
|--------------|---------|
| 1 | 16#0250 |
| 2 | 16#4420 |
| 3 | 16#0124 |
| 4 | 16#0002 |
| 5 | 16#0005 |
| 6 | 16#006F |
| 7 | 16#00DE |
| 8 | 16#014D |
| 9 | 16#01BC |
| 10 | 16#022B |
| 11 | 16#0000 |
| 12 | 16#0000 |
| 13 | 16#0000 |
| 14 | 16#0000 |

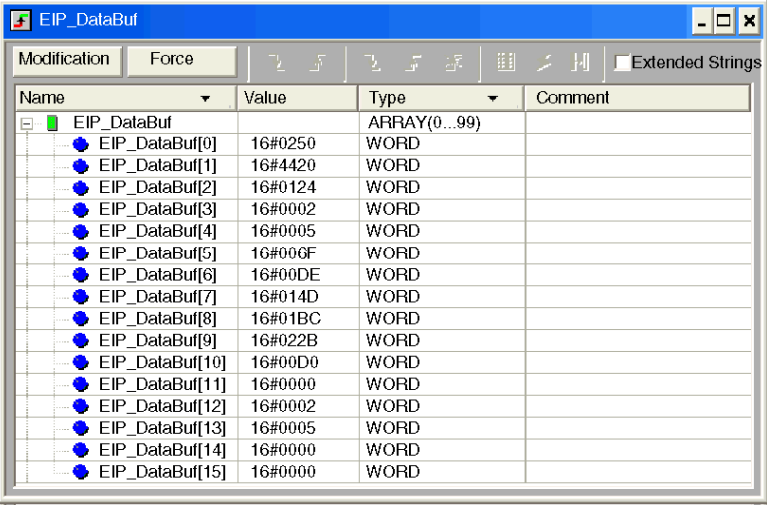
Viewing the Response

Use a Control Expert Animation table to display the EIP_DataBuf variable array. Note that the EIP_DataBuf variable array consists of the entire data buffer, which includes the:

- CIP request (5 words) located in EIP_DataBuf(0-4)
- CIP response (in this case, 5 words) located in EIP_DataBuf(5-9)
- CIP service type (1 word) located in EIP_DataBuf(10)
- CIP request status (1 word) located in EIP_DataBuf(11)
- Echo of location of first word to write in EIP_DataBuf(12)
- Echo of number of words to write in EIP_DataBuf(12)

To display the CIP response, follow these steps:

| Step | Action | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In Control Expert, select Tools → Project Browser to open the Project Browser . | | |
| 2 | In the Project Browser , right-click Animation Tables → New Animation Table . Result: A new animation table opens. | | |
| 3 | In the New Animation Table dialog, edit the following values: | | |
| | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Name</td> <td>Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf.</td> </tr> </table> | Name | Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf . |
| | Name | Type in a table name. For this example: EIP_DataBuf . | |
| | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Functional Mode</td> <td>Accept the default <None>.</td> </tr> </table> | Functional Mode | Accept the default <None> . |
| Functional Mode | Accept the default <None> . | | |
| <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Comment</td> <td>Leave blank.</td> </tr> </table> | Comment | Leave blank. | |
| Comment | Leave blank. | | |
| <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Number of animated characters</td> <td>Type 100, representing the size of the data buffer in words.</td> </tr> </table> | Number of animated characters | Type 100 , representing the size of the data buffer in words. | |
| Number of animated characters | Type 100 , representing the size of the data buffer in words. | | |
| 4 | <p>The completed dialog looks like this:</p>  <p>Click OK to close the dialog.</p> | | |
| 5 | In the animation table's Name column, type in the name of the variable assigned to the databuffer: EIP_DataBuf and press Enter . The animation table displays the EIP_DataBuf variable. | | |

| Step | Action | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|------|---------|-------------|--|---------------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|-----------------|---------|------|--|
| 6 | <p>Expand the EIP_DataBuf variable to display its word array, where you can view the CIP response at words EIP_DataBuf(7-16):</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf</td><td></td><td>ARRAY(0...99)</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[0]</td><td>16#0250</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[1]</td><td>16#4420</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[2]</td><td>16#0124</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[3]</td><td>16#0002</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[4]</td><td>16#0005</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[5]</td><td>16#006F</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[6]</td><td>16#00DE</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[7]</td><td>16#014D</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[8]</td><td>16#01BC</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[9]</td><td>16#022B</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[10]</td><td>16#00D0</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[11]</td><td>16#0000</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[12]</td><td>16#0002</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[13]</td><td>16#0005</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[14]</td><td>16#0000</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EIP_DataBuf[15]</td><td>16#0000</td><td>WORD</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note: Each word presents 2 bytes of data in little endian format, where the least significant byte is stored in the smallest memory address. For example, '50' in EIP_DataBuf[0] is the low byte, and '02' is the high byte.</p> | Name | Value | Type | Comment | EIP_DataBuf | | ARRAY(0...99) | | EIP_DataBuf[0] | 16#0250 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[1] | 16#4420 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[2] | 16#0124 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[3] | 16#0002 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[4] | 16#0005 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[5] | 16#006F | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[6] | 16#00DE | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[7] | 16#014D | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[8] | 16#01BC | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[9] | 16#022B | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[10] | 16#00D0 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[11] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[12] | 16#0002 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[13] | 16#0005 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[14] | 16#0000 | WORD | | EIP_DataBuf[15] | 16#0000 | WORD | |
| Name | Value | Type | Comment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf | | ARRAY(0...99) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[0] | 16#0250 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[1] | 16#4420 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[2] | 16#0124 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[3] | 16#0002 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[4] | 16#0005 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[5] | 16#006F | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[6] | 16#00DE | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[7] | 16#014D | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[8] | 16#01BC | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[9] | 16#022B | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[10] | 16#00D0 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[11] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[12] | 16#0002 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[13] | 16#0005 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[14] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EIP_DataBuf[15] | 16#0000 | WORD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Section 8.3

Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using MBP_MSTR

Overview

This section shows you how to configure the MBP_MSTR function block to send explicit messages using the Modbus TCP protocol.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Function Codes | 281 |
| Configuring the Control Parameter for Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging | 282 |

Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Function Codes

Overview

Every Modbus TCP explicit message performs a function. Each function is associated with a code (or number). You will need to identify the explicit messaging function by its name, decimal number, or hexadecimal number.

You can execute Modbus TCP explicit messages using either a Control Expert MBP_MSTR function block or the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool's **Modbus Explicit Message Window**.

NOTE: Configuration edits made to an Ethernet communication module from the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool are not saved to the operating parameters stored in the CPU and, therefore, are not sent by the CPU to the module on startup.

Services

The function codes supported by Control Expert include the following standard explicit messaging functions:

| Function Code | | Description | Available in... | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Hex | Dec | | MBP_MSTR block | Control Expert GUI |
| 1 | 1 | Write data | X | X |
| 2 | 2 | Read data | X | X |
| 3 | 3 | Get local statistics | X | X |
| 4 | 4 | Clear local statistics | X | X |
| 7 | 7 | Get remote statistics | X | X |
| 8 | 8 | Clear remote statistics | X | X |
| A | 10 | Reset module | X | X |
| 17 | 23 | Read / write data | X | X |
| FFF0 | 65520 | Enable / disable HTTP and FTP/TFTP services | X | - |
| "X" = the service is available. "-" = the service is not available. | | | | |

Configuring the Control Parameter for Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging

Overview

The `CONTROL` and `DATABUF` output parameters define the operation performed by the `MBP_MSTR` (see page 256) function block. For the Modbus TCP protocol, both the structure and the content of the `CONTROL` output parameter vary, depending upon the function code (see page 281).

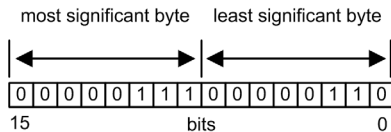
The structure of the `CONTROL` parameter is described, below, for each supported function code.

Control Parameter Routing Register

The `CONTROL[5]` routing register specifies the source and destination node addresses for network data transfer, and consists of the following 2 bytes:

- Most Significant Byte (MSB): contains the source node address, for example, the slot number of the 140 NOC 771 01
- Least Significant Byte (LSB): contains the destination node address—a value representing either a direct or a bridge address. The LSB is required for devices reached through a bridge, for example, an Ethernet to Modbus bridge or an Ethernet to Modbus Plus bridge. The values of the LSB are as follows:
 - If no bridge is used: LSB is set to zero(0).
 - If a bridge is used: LSB contains the Modbus Plus on Ethernet Transporter (MET) mapping index value. This value, also known as the Unit ID, indicates the device to which the message is directed.

The `CONTROL[5]` routing register:



When the Ethernet communication module acts as a server, the LSB indicates the destination of a message received by the communication module:

- messages with an LSB value from 0 to 254 are forwarded to and processed by the CPU
- messages with an LSB value of 255 are retained and processed by the Ethernet communication module

NOTE: Use unit ID 255 when requesting diagnostic data from the Ethernet communication module.

Write Data

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL [1] | Operation | 1 = write data |
| CONTROL [2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL [3] | Data buffer length | Number of addresses sent to the slave |
| CONTROL [4] | Starting register | Start address of the slave to which the data is written, in 16-bit words |
| CONTROL [5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |
| CONTROL [6] ¹ | IP address | Byte 4 of the IP address (MSB) |
| CONTROL [7] ¹ | | Byte 3 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [8] ¹ | | Byte 2 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [9] ¹ | | Byte 1 of the IP address (LSB) |
| 1. For example, the Control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.7 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 7. | | |

Read Data

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|---------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL [1] | Operation | 2 = read data |
| CONTROL [2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL [3] | Data buffer length | Number of addresses to be read from the slave |
| CONTROL [4] | Starting register | Determines the %MW starting register in the slave from which the data is read. For example: 1 = %MW1, 49 = %MW49) |
| CONTROL [5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |

| Register | Function | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------------|
| CONTROL [6] ¹ | IP address | Byte 4 of the IP address (MSB) |
| CONTROL [7] ¹ | | Byte 3 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [8] ¹ | | Byte 2 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [9] ¹ | | Byte 1 of the IP address (LSB) |
| 1. For example, the Control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.7 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 7. | | |

Get Local Statistics

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|---------------|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL [1] | Operation | 3 = read local statistics |
| CONTROL [2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL [3] | Data buffer length | Number of addresses to be read from local statistics (0...37) |
| CONTROL [4] | Starting register | First address from which the statistics table is read (Reg1=0) |
| CONTROL [5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot |
| | | Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |
| CONTROL [6] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [7] | | |
| CONTROL [8] | | |
| CONTROL [9] | | |

Module Response: A TCP/IP Ethernet module responds to the `Get Local Statistics` command with the following information:

| Word | Description | | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 00...02 | MAC Address | | | |
| 03 | Board Status—this word contains the following bits: | | | |
| | Bit 15 | 0 = Link LED off; 1 = Link LED ON | Bit 3 | Reserved |
| | Bits 14...13 | Reserved | Bit 2 | 0 = half duplex; 1 = full duplex |
| | Bit 12 | 0 = 10 Mbit; 1 = 100 Mbit | Bit 1 | 0 = not configured; 1 = configured |
| | Bits 11...9 | Reserved | Bit 0 | 0 = PLC not running; 1 = PLC or NOC running |
| | Bits 8...4 | Module Type—this bit presents the following values: | | |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 0 = NOE 2x1 ● 1 = ENT ● 2 = M1E ● 3 = NOE 771 00 ● 4 = ETY ● 5 = CIP ● 6 = (reserved) ● 7 = 140 CPU 651 x0 ● 8...9 = (reserved) | | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 10 = 140 NOE 771 10 ● 11 = 140 NOE 771 01 ● 12 = 140 NOE 771 11 ● 13...16 = (reserved) ● 17 = M340 CPU ● 18 = M340 NOE ● 19 = BMX NOC 0401 ● 20 = TSX ETC 101 ● 21 = 140 NOC 771 01 | |
| 04 and 05 | Number of receiver interrupts | | | |
| 06 and 07 | Number of transmitter interrupts | | | |
| 08 and 09 | Transmit_timeout error count | | | |
| 10 and 11 | Collision_detect error count | | | |
| 12 and 13 | Missed packets | | | |
| 14 and 15 | (reserved) | | | |
| 16 and 17 | Number of times driver has restarted | | | |
| 18 and 19 | Receive framing error detected | | | |
| 20 and 21 | Receiver overflow error detected | | | |
| 22 and 23 | Receive CRC error detected | | | |
| 24 and 25 | Receive buffer error detected | | | |
| 26 and 27 | Transmit buffer error detected | | | |
| 28 and 29 | Transmit silo underflow | | | |
| 30 and 31 | Late collision | | | |
| 32 and 33 | Lost carrier | | | |
| 34 and 35 | Number of retries | | | |
| 36 and 37 | IP address | | | |

Clear Local Statistics

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|---------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL [1] | Operation | 4 = clear local statistics |
| CONTROL [2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL [3] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [4] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |
| CONTROL [6] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [7] | | |
| CONTROL [8] | | |
| CONTROL [9] | | |

Get Remote Statistics

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL [1] | Operation | 7 = get remote statistics |
| CONTROL [2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL [3] | Data buffer length | Number of addresses to be read from the statistics data field (0...37) |
| CONTROL [4] | Starting register | First address from which the node statistics table is read |
| CONTROL [5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |
| CONTROL [6] ¹ | IP address | Byte 4 of the IP address (MSB) |
| CONTROL [7] ¹ | | Byte 3 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [8] ¹ | | Byte 2 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [9] ¹ | | Byte 1 of the IP address (LSB) |
| 1. For example, the Control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.7 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 7. | | |

Clear Remote Statistics

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL [1] | Operation | 8 = clear remote statistics |
| CONTROL [2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL [3] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [4] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |
| CONTROL [6] ¹ | IP address | Byte 4 of the IP address (MSB) |
| CONTROL [7] ¹ | | Byte 3 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [8] ¹ | | Byte 2 of the IP address |
| CONTROL [9] ¹ | | Byte 1 of the IP address (LSB) |
| <p>1. For example, the Control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.7 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 7.</p> | | |

Reset Module

The Control parameter consists of 9 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|---------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL [1] | Operation | 10 = reset module |
| CONTROL [2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL [3] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [4] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |
| CONTROL [6] | (not used) | — |
| CONTROL [7] | | |
| CONTROL [8] | | |
| CONTROL [9] | | |

Read/Write Data

The Control parameter consists of 11 contiguous words, as described below:

| Register | Function | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONTROL[1] | Operation | 23 = read / write data |
| CONTROL[2] | Error status | Holds the event code (<i>see page 355</i>) (read-only) |
| CONTROL[3] | Data buffer length | Number of addresses sent to the slave |
| CONTROL[4] | Starting register | Determines the %MW starting register in the slave to which the data will be written. For example: 1 = %MW1, 49 = %MW49) |
| CONTROL[5] | Routing register | High byte = Ethernet communication module slot |
| | | Low byte = MBP on Ethernet transporter (MET) mapping index (<i>see page 282</i>) |
| CONTROL[6] ¹ | IP address | Byte 4 of the IP address (MSB) |
| CONTROL[7] ¹ | | Byte 3 of the IP address |
| CONTROL[8] ¹ | | Byte 2 of the IP address |
| CONTROL[9] ¹ | | Byte 1 of the IP address (LSB) |
| CONTROL[10] | Data buffer length | Number of addresses to be read from the slave |
| CONTROL[11] | Starting register | Determines the %MW starting register in the slave from which the data is read. For example: 1 = %MW1, 49 = %MW49) |

1. For example, the Control parameter handles the IP address 192.168.1.7 in the following order: Byte 4 = 192, Byte 3 = 168, Byte 2 = 1, Byte 1 = 7.

Section 8.4

Explicit Messaging via the Control Expert GUI

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|
| Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices | 290 |
| Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus TCP Devices | 293 |

Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices

Overview

Use the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window to send an explicit message from Control Expert to an EtherNet/IP module or device on the network.

An explicit message can be sent as either a connected, or an unconnected message:

- an unconnected message requires path — or addressing — information identifying the destination device and, optionally, device attributes
- a connected explicit message contains both path information and a connection identifier to the target device

You can use explicit messaging to perform many different services. Not every EtherNet/IP device supports every service.

NOTE: Before you can perform explicit messaging, connect the DTM for the upstream communication module to the module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window, below, presents an example of both the configuration of an EtherNet/IP explicit message and the response. The explicit message is addressed to a remote STB NIC 2212 network interface module to obtain diagnostic information.

The screenshot shows the 'EtherNet/IP Explicit Message' window with the following configuration and response:

| Address | Service | Data(hex) |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------|
| IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 6 | Number: 14 | |
| Class: 4 | Name: Get_Attribute_Single | |
| Instance: 100 | <input type="checkbox"/> Enter Path (hex) | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attribute: 3 | 20 04 24 64 30 03 | |

Buttons: Repeat (500ms)

Messaging: Connected Unconnected

Response(hex):

```
A0 10 00 00 0F 00 00 00; .....
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00; .....
0F 00 00 00 ; .....
```

Status:

Status = 0(0x00), Status EtherNet/IP = 0(0x00)

Sending Explicit Messages

The following steps explain how to execute the EtherNet/IP explicit message, depicted above:

| Step | Action | |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module that is upstream of the target device. | |
| 2 | Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select Device menu → EtherNet/IP Explicit Message . Result: The EtherNet/IP Explicit Message window opens. | |
| 3 | Configure the explicit message using the following fields: | |
| | IP Address | The IP address of the target device, used to identify the target of the explicit message. In the above example: 192.168.1.6 . |
| | Class | The class identifier of the target device, used in the construction of the message path. An integer from 1 to 65535. In this example: 4 . |
| | Instance | The class instance of the target device, used in the construction of the message path. An integer from 0 to 65535. In this example: 100 . |
| | Attribute | (Optional) The specific device attribute — or property — that is the target of the explicit message, used in the construction of the message path. An integer from 0 to 65535. In this example: 3 NOTE: Select the check box to enable this field. |
| | NOTE: Refer to your EtherNet/IP device user manual for class, instance and attribute values. | |
| | Number | The integer associated with the service to be performed by the explicit message. An integer from 1 to 127. NOTE: If you select Custom Service as the named service, type in a service number. This field is read-only for all other services. |
| | Name | Select the service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example: Get_Attribute_Single . |
| | Enter Path | (Optional) Select this check box to enable the message path field, where you can manually enter the entire path to the target device. In this example, the path is not manually entered. NOTE: Displayed only when Advanced Mode is enabled. |
| | Data | The data to be sent to the target device, for services that send data. In this example, leave blank. |
| Messaging | Select the type of explicit message to send: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connected ● Unconnected In this example, select Unconnected . | |
| Repeat 500 ms | Select this check box to re-send the explicit message every 500 ms. In this example, leave this blank. | |

| Step | Action |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | After your explicit message is configured, click Send to Device . The Response area displays the data sent to the configuration tool by the target device in hexadecimal format. The Status area displays messages indicating whether or not the explicit message has succeeded. |
| 5 | Click Close to close the window. |

Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus TCP Devices

Overview

Use the **Modbus Explicit Message** window to send an explicit message from Control Expert to a Modbus TCP module or device on the network.

You can use explicit messaging to perform many different services. Not all Modbus TCP devices support all services.

NOTE: Before you can perform explicit messaging, connect the DTM for the upstream communication module to the module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit → Connect**.

The **Modbus TCP Explicit Message** window, below, presents an example of both the configuration of a Modbus TCP explicit message, and the response. In this example, the explicit message is used to read 2 registers in the remote STB NIP 2212 network interface module, starting at offset 5391.

The screenshot displays the 'Modbus TCP Explicit Message' window with the following configuration and response data:

| Address | | Service | | Data |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------|----------------------|------|
| IP Address | 192 . 168 . 1 . 7 | Number | 3 | |
| Start Address | 5391 | Name | ReadHoldingRegisters | |
| Quantity | 2 | | | |
| Read Device Id Code | Basic Device Identity | | | |
| Object Id | 0 | | | |
| Unit ID | 255 | | | |

Buttons: **Send to Device**, Repeat (500ms)

Response

```
00 06 00 00 ; .....
```

Status

```
Status = 0(0x0), description:ModbusNoError
```

Sending Explicit Messages

To send an explicit message to a target Modbus TCP device:

| Step | Action | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module that is upstream of the target device. | |
| 2 | Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select Device menu → Modbus Explicit Message . Result: The Modbus Explicit Message window opens. | |
| 3 | Configure the explicit message using the following fields: | |
| | IP Address | The IP address of the target device, used to identify the target of the explicit message. In this example: 192.168.1.7 . |
| | Start Address | A component of the addressing path. In this example 5391 . |
| | Quantity | A component of the addressing path. In this example 2 . |
| | Read Device Id Code | (read-only) The service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example Basic Device Identity . Not used in this example. |
| | Object Id | (read-only) Specify the object the explicit message is intended to access. In this example 0 . Not used in this example. |
| | Refer to your Modbus TCP device user manual for Start Address, Quantity, Read Device Id Code, and Object Id values. | |
| | Unit Id | The number of the device, or module, that is the target of the connection. A value of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 255 (the default) used to access the Ethernet communication module itself ● 0...254 identifies the device number of the target device, behind a Modbus TCP to Modbus gateway |
| | Number | (read-only) The integer associated with the service to be performed by the explicit message. An integer from 0...255. |
| | Name | Select the service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example ReadHoldingRegisters |
| Repeat 500ms | Select this check box to re-send the explicit message every 500 ms. Leave this check box de-selected. | |
| 4 | After your explicit message is configured, click Send to Device . The Response area displays any data sent to the configuration tool by the target device in hexadecimal format. The Status area displays messages indicating whether or not the explicit message has succeeded. | |
| 5 | Click Close to close the window. | |

Chapter 9

Diagnostics

Overview

This chapter describes methods of diagnosing the condition of the Ethernet communication module provided by the:

- Ethernet communication module hardware, and
- Control Expert configuration software

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

| Section | Topic | Page |
|---------|-------------------------------------|------|
| 9.1 | Module Hardware Diagnostics | 296 |
| 9.2 | Control Expert Software Diagnostics | 298 |

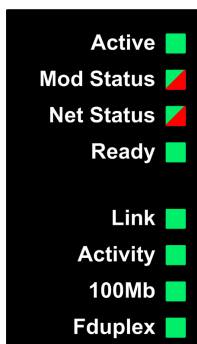
Section 9.1

Module Hardware Diagnostics

LED Indicators for the Ethernet Communication Module

LED Indicators

The 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module displays the following LED indicators:



LED Descriptions

Use the LED display to diagnose the state of the module, as follows:

| LED | Color | Description |
|----------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Active | Green | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: Indicates that the module is not communicating with the CPU over the backplane. ● Steady Green: Indicates that the module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ has just been turned on and has not yet started the LED power-up test, or ○ is communicating with the CPU over the backplane |
| Mod Status (Module Status) | Green/Red | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: Power is not being supplied to the module. ● Steady Green: The module is operating normally. ● Blinking Green: The module has not been configured. ● Steady Red: The module has detected a major event. ● Blinking Red: The module is not properly configured. |

| LED | Color | Description |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Net Status (Network Status) | Green/ Red | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: Power is not being supplied to the module or the module does not have an IP address assigned. ● Steady Green: The module has established at least one CIP connection. ● Blinking Green: The module has obtained an IP address but has not established any CIP connections. ● Steady Red: The module has detected that its IP address is a duplicate IP address. ● Blinking Red: One or more exclusive owner CIP connection (with the module as target) have timed out. All the timed-out exclusive owner CIP connections have not yet been re-established. |
| Ready | Green | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: No power is supplied to the module. ● Steady Green: Indicates that the module is operating normally. ● Two flashes: The MAC address is missing. ● Three flashes: The Ethernet link is not connected. ● Four flashes: The module has detected a duplicate IP address. ● Five flashes: The module is waiting for a served IP address. ● Six flashes: The module is using its default IP address. ● Seven flashes: The module has detected a configuration error. <p>NOTE: If more than one diagnostic condition exists simultaneously, the Ready LED displays the shortest flash sequence.</p> |
| Link | Green | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: An Ethernet link has not been established. ● Steady Green: An Ethernet link has been established |
| Activity | Green | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: There is no receive or transmit activity. ● Flashes Green: Indicates activity. |
| 100Mb | Green | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: No 100Mb Ethernet link is detected. ● Steady Green: The module connected with a 100Mb Ethernet link. |
| Fduplex (Full Duplex) | Green | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Off: The module is not connected to a full duplex Ethernet link. ● Steady Green: Indicates that the module is connected with a full duplex link. |

Section 9.2

Control Expert Software Diagnostics

Overview

This section describes the diagnostic tools, provided by the Control Expert configuration software, that you can use to monitor the condition of the Ethernet communication module.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|
| Using the Diagnostic Window | 299 |
| Ethernet Port Diagnostics | 301 |
| Bandwidth Diagnostics | 304 |
| Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics | 307 |
| Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics | 311 |
| Logging | 313 |

Using the Diagnostic Window

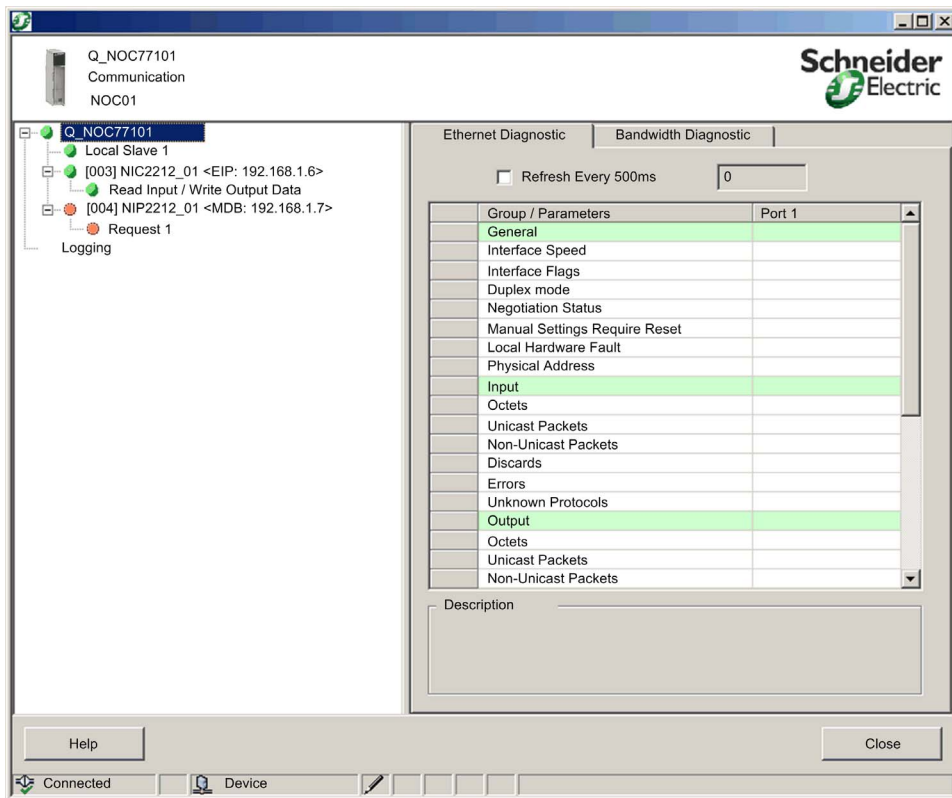
Introduction

Use the **Diagnostic** window to display:

- LED icons (in the left pane of the window) that indicate the operating status of modules, devices and connections
- pages (in the right pane of the window) that present diagnostic data for the following:
 - the communication module
 - local slave nodes activated for the communication module
 - EtherNet/IP connections between the communication module and a remote EtherNet/IP device

NOTE: Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit → Connect**.

The **Diagnostic** window looks like this:





To open the **Diagnostic** window:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 2 | In the menu, select Device menu → Diagnostic . |

Diagnostic LED Icons

During the time that a communication module DTM is connected to the physical communication module, Control Expert sends an explicit message request once per second to detect the state of the communication module, and the states of the remote devices and EtherNet/IP connections linked to that module.

Control Expert places one of the following status icons over the module, device or connection nodes in the left pane of the **Diagnostic** window to indicate its current status:

| This icon... | Indicates the following state for a... | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | Communication module | Connection to a remote device |
|  | Run state | The health bit for every EtherNet/IP connection and Modbus TCP request, to a remote device or to a sub-device or module, is set to active (1). |
|  | One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● unknown ● started ● stopped ● not connected | The health bit for at least one EtherNet/IP connection or Modbus TCP request, to a remote device or to a sub-device or module, is set to inactive (0). |

Ethernet Port Diagnostics

Introduction

Use the **Ethernet Diagnostic** page to display data for the communication module's Ethernet port that is either:

- dynamically refreshed every 500 ms, or
- a static snapshot of Ethernet port data

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

| When the checkbox is... | This page... |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and • Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed |
| De-selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Displays static data, and • Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value |

NOTE: Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **Ethernet Diagnostic** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows the 'Ethernet Diagnostic' window with the 'Refresh Every 500ms' checkbox checked and a refresh rate of 112. The table below displays the following data:

| Group / Parameters | Port 1 |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| General | |
| Interface Speed | 100 |
| Interface Flags | Active link |
| Duplex mode | Full duplex |
| Negotiation Status | Successfully negotiated speed and duplex |
| Manual Settings Require Reset | Interface can activate change to link parameters automatically |
| Local Hardware Fault | No |
| Physical Address | 08-80-F4-01-FC-11 |
| Input | |
| Octets | 11620142 |
| Unicast Packets | 52909 |
| Non-Unicast Packets | 103124 |
| Discards | 0 |
| Errors | 0 |
| Unknown Protocols | 0 |
| Output | |
| Octets | 4131129 |
| Unicast Packets | 53514 |
| Non-Unicast Packets | 40 |

Below the table is a 'Description' field which is currently empty.

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 2 | In the menu, select Device menu → Diagnostic . |
| 3 | In the left pane of the Diagnostic window, select the communication module node. |
| 4 | Click on the Ethernet Diagnostic tab to open that page. |

Ethernet Diagnostic Parameters

The **Ethernet Diagnostic** page displays the following parameters for the communication module's single Ethernet port:

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| General parameters: | |
| Interface Speed | Valid values include: 0, 10, 100 Mbits/second |
| Interface Flags | Bit 0—Link Status: 0 = Inactive; 1 = Active |
| | Bit 1—Duplex Mode (see below) |
| | Bits 2...4—Negotiation Status (see below) |
| | Bit 5—Manual Setting Requires Reset (see below) |
| | Bit 6—Local Hardware Fault (see below) |
| Duplex Mode | 0 = half duplex; 1 = full duplex |
| Negotiation Status | 3 = successfully negotiated speed and duplex 4 = forced speed and link |
| Manual Setting Requires Reset | 0 = automatic; 1 = device requires reset |
| Local Hardware Fault | 0 = no event; 1 = event detected |
| Physical Address | Module MAC Address |
| Input parameters: | |
| Octets | Octets received on the interface |
| Unicast Packets | Unicast packets received on the interface |
| Non-Unicast Packets | Non-unicast packets received on the interface |
| Discards | Inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded |
| Errors | Inbound packets that contain detected errors (excludes In Discards) |
| Unknown Protocols | Inbound packets with unknown protocol |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Output parameters: | |
| Octets | Octets received on the interface |
| Unicast Packets | Unicast packets received on the interface |
| Non-Unicast Packets | Non-unicast packets received on the interface |
| Discards | Inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded |
| Errors | Outbound packets that contain detected errors (excludes In Discards) |
| Unknown Protocols | Outbound packets with unknown protocol |
| Error counter parameters: | |
| Alignment Errors | Frames that are not an integral number of octets in length |
| FCS Errors | Frames received that do not pass the FCS check |
| Single Collisions | Successfully transmitted frames that experienced exactly one collision |
| Multiple Collisions | Successfully transmitted frames that experienced more than one collision |
| SQE Test Errors | Number of times the SQE test error is detected |
| Deferred Transmissions | Frames for which first transmission attempt is delayed because the medium is busy |
| Late Collisions | Number of times a collision is detected later than 512 bittimes into the transmission of a packet |
| Excessive Collisions | Frames for which transmission does not succeed due to excessive collisions |
| MAC Transmit Errors | Frames for which transmission fails due to a detected internal MAC sublayer transmit error |
| Carrier Sense Errors | Times that the carrier sense condition was lost or not asserted when attempting to transmit a frame |
| Frame Too Long | Frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size |
| MAC Receive Errors | Frames for which reception on an interface does not succeed due to a detected internal MAC sublayer receive error |

Bandwidth Diagnostics

Introduction

Use the **Bandwidth Diagnostic** page to display either dynamically generated or static data for the communication module's bandwidth usage.

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

| When the checkbox is... | This page... |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and• Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed |
| De-selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Displays static data, and• Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value |

NOTE: Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **Bandwidth Diagnostic** page looks like this:

| Group / Parameter | Value | Unit |
|---------------------------|-------|-----------|
| I/O - Scanner | | |
| EtherNet/IP Sent | 0 | Packets/s |
| EtherNet/IP Received | 0 | Packets/s |
| Modbus/TCP Sent | 16 | Packets/s |
| Modbus/TCP Received | 16 | Packets/s |
| I/O - Adapter | | |
| EtherNet/IP Sent | 0 | Packets/s |
| EtherNet/IP Received | 0 | Packets/s |
| I/O - Module | | |
| Module Capacity | 12000 | Packets/s |
| Module Utilization | 0 | % |
| Messaging - Client | | |
| EtherNet/IP Activity | 0 | Packets/s |
| Modbus/TCP Activity | 0 | Packets/s |
| Messaging - Server | | |
| EtherNet/IP Activity | 7 | Packets/s |
| Modbus/TCP Activity | 1 | Packets/s |
| Module | | |
| Processor Utilization | 14 | % |

Description

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 2 | In the menu, select Device menu → Diagnostic . The Diagnostic window opens. |
| 3 | In the left pane of the Diagnostic window, select the communication module node. |
| 4 | Click on the Bandwidth Diagnostic tab to open that page. |

Bandwidth Diagnostic Parameters

The **Bandwidth Diagnostic** page displays the following parameters for the communication module:

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I/O - Scanner: | |
| EtherNet/IP Sent | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| EtherNet/IP Received | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| Modbus TCP Requests | The number of Modbus TCP requests the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| Modbus TCP Responses | The number of Modbus TCP responses the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| I/O - Adapter: | |
| EtherNet/IP Sent | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| EtherNet/IP Received | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| I/O - Module | |
| Module Capacity | The maximum number of packets that the module can process, in packets per second. |
| Module Utilization | The percentage of communication module capacity being used by the application. |
| Messaging - Client: | |
| EtherNet/IP Activity | The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |
| Modbus TCP Activity | The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |
| Messaging - Server: | |
| EtherNet/IP Activity | The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |
| Modbus TCP Activity | The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |
| Module: | |
| Processor Utilization | The percent of Ethernet communication module processor capacity used by the present level of communication activity. |

Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics

Introduction

The **Local Slave Diagnostic** page and the **EIP Connection Diagnostic** page present common information. Use the:

- **Local Slave Diagnostic** page to display I/O status and production/consumption information for a selected local slave
- **EIP Connection Diagnostic** page to display I/O status and production/consumption information for a connection of a remote EtherNet/IP device

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

| When the checkbox is... | This page... |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and ● Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed |
| De-selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Displays static data, and ● Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value |

NOTE: Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the communication module or remote device DTM to the physical module or device. To do this, select the appropriate node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The following figure presents an example of the **EIP Connection Diagnostic** page. (Except for the title, the **Local Slave Diagnostic** page is the same.)

The screenshot shows the 'EIP Connection Diagnostic' window with two tabs: 'EIP Connection Diagnostic' (selected) and 'I/O Values'. The main area contains a table with the following data:

| Group / Parameter | Value | Unit |
|---------------------------|-------|------|
| [-] Status | | |
| Input | 68 | |
| Output | 68 | |
| General | 208 | |
| Extended | 1 | |
| [-] Counter | | |
| Frame Error | 0 | |
| Time-Out | 0 | |
| Refused | 0 | |
| Production | 0 | |
| Consumption | 0 | |
| Production Byte | 0 | |
| Consumption Byte | 0 | |
| Theoretical Packet/s | 66 | |
| Real Packet/s | 0 | |
| [-] Diagnostic | | |
| Production Connection ID | 0 | |
| Consumption Connection ID | 0 | |
| O -> T API | 0 | |

Below the table is a 'Description' field with a text area and two arrow buttons. To the right of the table is a checkbox labeled 'Refresh Every 500ms' with a value of '0' in a text box.

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 2 | In the menu, select Device menu → Diagnostic . |
| 3 | In the left pane of the Diagnostic window, click on one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● for local slave diagnostics, select the communication module node ● for remote device connection diagnostics, select a remote device connection |
| 4 | Depending upon you selection in step 3, above, click on either the Local Slave Diagnostic tab or the EIP Connection Diagnostic tab to open that page. |

Diagnostic Parameters

This page displays the following diagnostic parameters for the selected local slave or connection:

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Status (<i>see page 310</i>): | |
| Input | An integer representing input status. |
| Output | An integer representing output status. |
| General | An integer representing basic connection status. |
| Extended | An integer representing extended connection status. |
| Counter: | |
| Frame Error | Increments each time a frame is not sent by missing resources or is impossible to send. |
| Time-Out | Increments each time a connection times out. |
| Refused | Increments when connection is refused by the remote station. |
| Production | Increments each time a message is produced. |
| Consumption | Increments each time a message is consumed. |
| Production Byte | Total of produced messages, in bytes, since the communication module was last reset. |
| Consumption Byte | Total of consumed messages, in bytes, since the communication module was last reset. |
| Theoretical Packets per second | Packets per second calculated using current configuration value. |
| Real Packets per second | Actual number of packets per second generated by this connection. |
| Diagnostic: | |
| Production Connection ID | The connection ID. |
| Consumption Connection ID | The connection ID. |
| O -> T API | Accepted packet interval (API) of the output connection. |
| T -> O API | Accepted packet interval (API) of the input connection. |
| O -> T RPI | Requested packet interval (RPI) of the output connection. |
| T -> O RPI | Requested packet interval (RPI) of the input connection. |
| Socket Diagnostics: | |
| Socket ID | Internal Identification of the socket. |
| Remote IP Address | IP address of the remote station, for this connection. |
| Remote Port | Port number of the remote station, for this connection. |
| Local IP Address | IP address of the communication module, for this connection. |
| Local Port | Port number of the communication module, for this connection. |

Connection Status Codes

The Input and Output Status diagnostic parameters (*see page 309*), in the preceding table, can present the following values:

| Input/Output Status (dec) | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0 | OK |
| 33 | Time-out |
| 53 | IDLE |
| 54 | Connection established |
| 58 | Not connected (TCP) |
| 65 | Not connected (CIP) |
| 68 | Connection establishing |
| 70 | Not connected (EPIC) |
| 77 | Scanner stopped |

Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics

Introduction

Use the **I/O Values** page to display both the input data image and output data image for the selected local slave or connection.

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

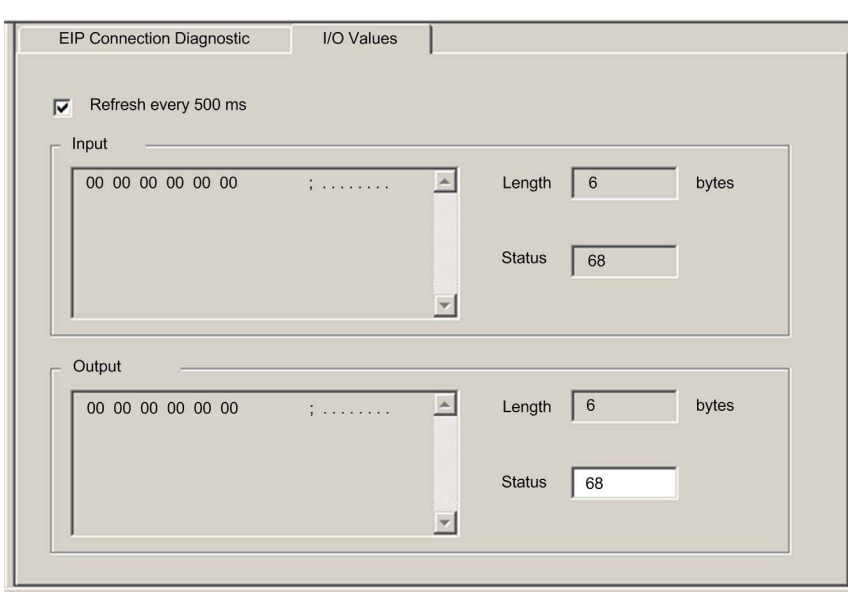
| When the checkbox is... | This page... |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and • Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed |
| De-selected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Displays static data, and • Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value |

NOTE: Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the communication module or remote device DTM to the physical module or device. To do this, select the appropriate node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit → Connect**.

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the DTM Browser , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens. |
| 2 | In the menu, select Device menu → Diagnostic . |
| 3 | In the left pane of the Diagnostic window, click on one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the communication module node, or • a connection node |
| 4 | Click on the I/O Values tab to open that page. |

The following example depicts the **I/O Values** page for a remote device connection:



Local Slave / Connection I/O Values

This page displays the following parameters for either a local slave or a remote device connection input and output values:

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Input/Output data display | A display of the local slave or remote device input or output data image. |
| Length | The number of bytes in the input or output data image. |
| Status | The Scanner Diagnostic object's scanner status (<i>see page 234</i>), with respect to the read of the input or output data image. |

Logging

Description

Control Expert maintains a log of events for:

- the Control Expert embedded FDT container
- each Ethernet communication module DTM, and
- each EtherNet/IP remote device DTM

Events relating to the Control Expert FDT container are displayed in the **FDT log event** page of the **Output Window**.

Events relating to a communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device are displayed:

- in configuration mode: in the **Device Editor**, by selecting the **Logging** node in the left pane
- in diagnostic mode: in the **Diagnostics** window, by selecting the **Logging** node in the left pane

The following is a sample of the events log displayed in the **Diagnostics** window:

| Date / Time | Log Level | Message | Detail Message |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 2009-09-25 08:57:23 | Error | Communication error occurred. | Unknown status! |
| 2009-09-25 08:56:45 | Information | The FDT Frame Application has ... | |
| 2009-09-25 08:55:14 | Information | IP Address of slave device succe... | 192.168.1.1 -> 192... |
| 2009-09-25 08:52:56 | Information | The FDT Frame Application has ... | |
| 2009-09-25 08:52:17 | Information | DTM is offline. | |
| 2009-09-25 08:50:44 | Information | DTM is offline. | |
| 2009-09-25 08:49:12 | Information | The FDT Frame Application has ... | |
| 2009-09-25 08:48:52 | Information | The FDT Frame Application has ... | |
| 2009-09-25 08:46:56 | Information | The FDT Frame Application has ... | |
| 2009-09-25 08:45:17 | Warning | The persisted network interface c... | |
| 2009-09-25 08:43:44 | Information | DTM is offline. | |
| 2009-09-25 08:42:12 | Information | The FDT Frame Application has ... | |
| 2009-09-25 08:40:52 | Information | The FDT Frame Application has ... | |

Logging Attributes

The **Logging** window displays the result of an operation or function performed by Control Expert. Each log entry includes the following attributes:

| Attribute | Description | |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Date/Time | The time the event occurred, displayed in the format: yyyy-mm--dd hh:mm:ss | |
| Log Level | The level of event importance. Values include: | |
| | Information | A successfully completed operation. |
| | Warning | An operation that Control Expert completed, but which may lead to a subsequent detected error. |
| Error | An operation that Control Expert was unable to complete. | |
| Message | A brief description of the core meaning of the event. | |
| Detail Message | A more detailed description of the event, which may include parameter names, location paths, etc. | |

Chapter 10

Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module

Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module

Overview

You can replace the communication module at any time using another module with compatible firmware. A module can be replaced when power to the module is either:

- off (cold swap), or
- on (hot swap)

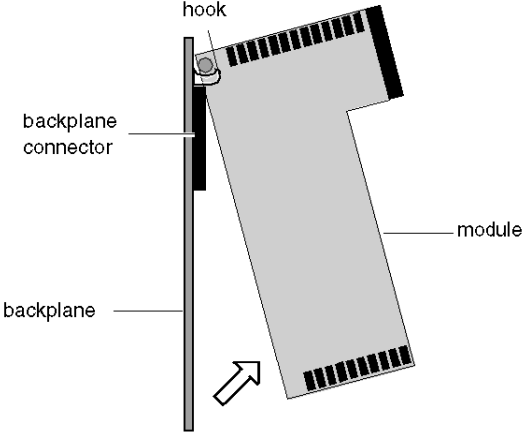
The replacement module obtains its operating parameters over the backplane connection from the CPU. The transfer occurs either immediately (hot swap) or when power is next cycled to the device (cold swap).

NOTE: The operating parameters that the CPU sends to a replacement module do not include any parameter values that were edited in the original module using explicit messaging "SET" commands.

Replacing the Communication Module

Replacing the module involves removing the old module and mounting a new one in its place.

To remove a module:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Use a Phillips-head screw driver to detach the screw, located at the lower front side of the module, from the backplane. |
| 2 | <p>Swing the bottom of the module away and up from the backplane, pivoting it on the hooks holding the module at the top of the backplane, until the module detaches from backplane connector:</p>  |
| 3 | Lift the module up and off of the hooks located at the top of the backplane. |

To install the replacement module, follow the instructions in the module mounting procedure ([see page 18](#)).

Chapter 11

Embedded Web Pages

Overview

This chapter describes the embedded web pages for the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module.

The communication module includes a Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) server. The server transmits web pages for the purpose of monitoring, diagnosing, and controlling remote access to the communication module. The server provides easy access to the communication module from standard internet browsers, including—but not limited to—Internet Explorer.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

| Section | Topic | Page |
|---------|-------------------------------------------|------|
| 11.1 | Accessing the Embedded Web Server | 318 |
| 11.2 | Monitoring the Control Expert Application | 324 |
| 11.3 | Diagnostics | 336 |

Section 11.1

Accessing the Embedded Web Server

Introduction

This section introduces the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module's embedded web server, and describes how to access—and to control access to—the web pages.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|--------------------------------------------|------|
| Introducing the Embedded Web Pages | 319 |
| Accessing the Home Page | 320 |
| Using and Editing a Username and Passwords | 321 |

Introducing the Embedded Web Pages

Introduction

Use the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module's embedded web server pages to:

- display real-time diagnostic data for both the module and other networked devices
- read the values of—and write values to—Control Expert application variables
- manage and control access to the embedded web pages by assigning separate passwords for:
 - viewing the diagnostic web pages, and
 - using the Data Editor to write values to Control Expert application variables

Requirements

The embedded web server presents module data in the form of standard HTML web pages.

Access the embedded web pages using Internet Explorer version 4.0 or higher, running the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.6 or higher.

Accessing the Home Page

On First Use

Before you begin to use the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module's embedded web pages, you need to:

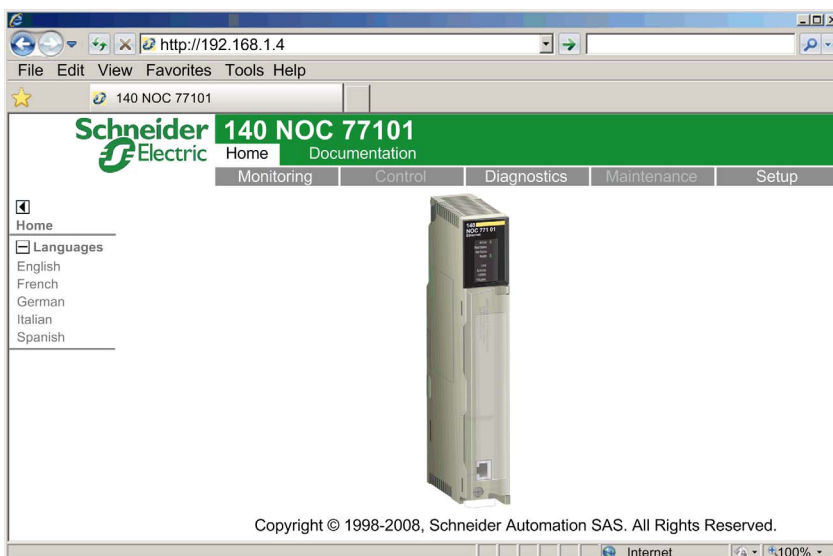
- navigate to the web server (*see page 320*)
- access web page content by inputting the default username and password (*see page 321*) combination
- change passwords (*see page 322*) that are required for:
 - accessing web pages, and
 - writing data values using the **Data Editor**

Navigating to the Web Server

To access the embedded web server, open an Internet browser, then enter the IP address (*see page 62*) of the Ethernet communication module in the format: *http://IP address*, then click **Enter**.

NOTE: If a DNS name has been assigned to the module, the DNS name can be used instead of the IP address.

The web server opens, displaying the **Home** page:



Use the **Home** page as the point of entry to the communication module's embedded web server. From here, you can navigate to every other web page.

Using and Editing a Username and Passwords

Inputting the Username and Web Page Access Password

A username and password are required to access web page content and edit application data. All username and password settings are case sensitive.


The embedded web pages support the use of a single, editable username for both web page access and data editing. The factory-default username setting is **USER**.

The embedded web pages require two different passwords, as follows:

- an HTTP access password, which grants read-only access to web page content
- a data editor write password, which permits the editing of data values using the **Data Editor**


Each password can be edited. The factory default setting for each password is **USER**.

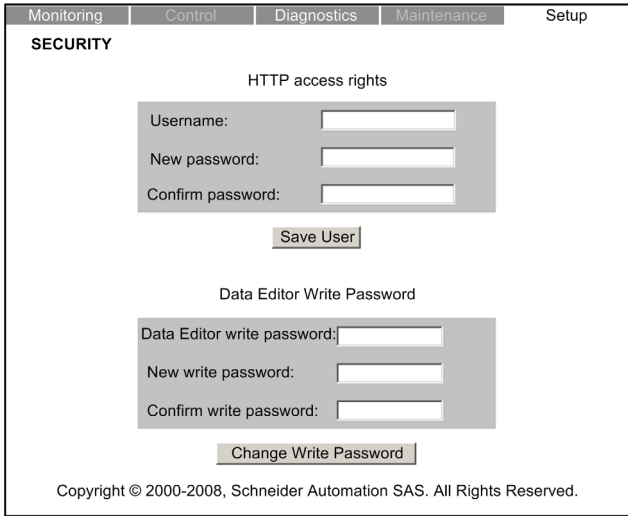
To input a username and password combination

| Step | Description |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | After navigating to the embedded web server (<i>see page 320</i>), select one of the main menu selections (for example, Setup). |
| 2 | <p>Select a page name from the list of pages on the left side of the page (for example, Security). The following dialog opens:</p>  |
| 3 | <p>Type in the required Username and Password combination, then click OK.</p> <p>NOTE: In the above example, the settings for both the Username and Password remain set to the default setting of USER.</p> |

Editing the Username and Passwords

The single username and both passwords can be edited in the **Security** web page. To edit username and passwords, follow these steps:

| Step | Description |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Navigate to and open the web server, (<i>see page 320</i>) using the IP address of the communication module. The Home page opens. |
| 2 | <p>From the Home page, click on the Setup main menu item. If required, input the username and web page password (<i>see page 321</i>). The Setup page opens:</p>  |

| Step | Description | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>On the left side of the page, click on the Security node. (If required, input the Username and web page access Password.)</p> <p>The Security page opens:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a web interface with a navigation bar containing 'Monitoring', 'Control', 'Diagnostics', 'Maintenance', and 'Setup'. The 'Security' section is active. It contains two main sections: 'HTTP access rights' and 'Data Editor Write Password'. The 'HTTP access rights' section has three input fields for 'Username:', 'New password:', and 'Confirm password:', followed by a 'Save User' button. The 'Data Editor Write Password' section has three input fields for 'Data Editor write password:', 'New write password:', and 'Confirm write password:', followed by a 'Change Write Password' button. At the bottom of the page, there is a copyright notice: 'Copyright © 2000-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.'</p> | | | | | | |
| 4 | <p>To change the username and password combination used for web page access, in the HTTP access rights section of the page, enter values for the following fields:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Username:</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To change the username: type in a new username ● To retain the current username (for example, if you are changing only the password): type in the current username </td> </tr> <tr> <td>New password:</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To change the password: type in a new password ● To keep the current password (for example, if you are changing only the username): type in the current password </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Confirm password:</td> <td>Type in the same password entered in the New password field, above.</td> </tr> </table> | Username: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To change the username: type in a new username ● To retain the current username (for example, if you are changing only the password): type in the current username | New password: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To change the password: type in a new password ● To keep the current password (for example, if you are changing only the username): type in the current password | Confirm password: | Type in the same password entered in the New password field, above. |
| Username: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To change the username: type in a new username ● To retain the current username (for example, if you are changing only the password): type in the current username | | | | | | |
| New password: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To change the password: type in a new password ● To keep the current password (for example, if you are changing only the username): type in the current password | | | | | | |
| Confirm password: | Type in the same password entered in the New password field, above. | | | | | | |
| 5 | Click the Save User button. | | | | | | |
| 6 | <p>To change the password used for writing data values in the Data Editor, in the Data Editor Write Password section of the page, enter values for the following fields:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Data Editor write password:</td> <td>Type in the current password that is required to write data using the Data Editor.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>New write password:</td> <td>Type in the new Data Editor password.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Confirm write password:</td> <td>Type in the same password entered in the New write password field, above.</td> </tr> </table> | Data Editor write password: | Type in the current password that is required to write data using the Data Editor . | New write password: | Type in the new Data Editor password. | Confirm write password: | Type in the same password entered in the New write password field, above. |
| Data Editor write password: | Type in the current password that is required to write data using the Data Editor . | | | | | | |
| New write password: | Type in the new Data Editor password. | | | | | | |
| Confirm write password: | Type in the same password entered in the New write password field, above. | | | | | | |
| 7 | Click the Change Write Password button. | | | | | | |

Section 11.2

Monitoring the Control Expert Application

Overview

This section describes how to use the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module's embedded web pages to monitor the Control Expert application.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Using the Monitoring Page | 325 |
| Data Editor (Standard) | 326 |
| Working With Data Templates | 331 |
| Data Editor (Lite) | 335 |

Using the Monitoring Page

Monitoring Page

Click on the main menu **Monitoring** command to display the **Monitoring** page:



To access a monitoring service, click on either of the following links:

- **Data Editor Lite**
- **Data Editor Standard**

Data Editor (Standard)

Overview

The **Data Editor** is a Java applet that dynamically displays run-time application data. Use the **Data Editor** to create and edit data monitoring tables that provide read/write access to application data and device registers.

NOTE: Write access is password protected.

⚠ WARNING

Unintended Equipment Operation

The data editor makes it possible to write to application variables and change application data values.

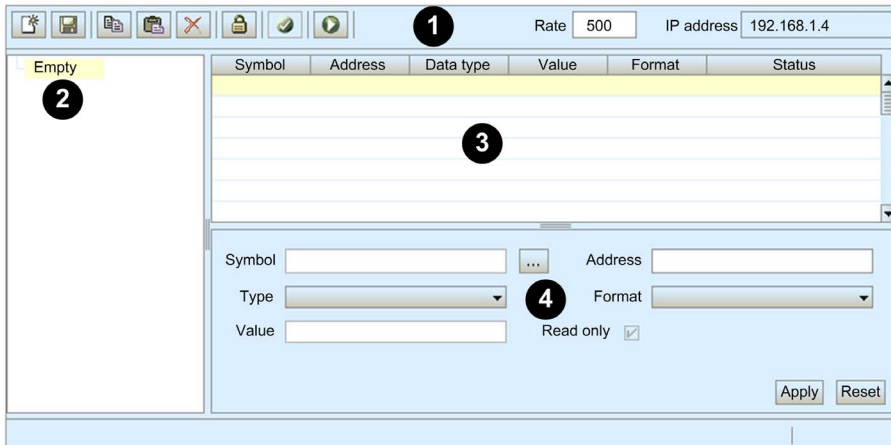
- Use passwords to strictly limit access to write data functionality.
- Do not use weak passwords, including the default password and other obvious passwords.
- Limit access to trained personnel.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

This topic describes the **Data Editor** user interface.

Data Editor










The **Data Editor** presents the following controls:



- 1 Toolbar
- 2 Data template list
- 3 Data template
- 4 Configuration Area

Toolbar

The **Data Editor** toolbar presents the following features:

| Command or Field | Icon | Description |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| New |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a node in the data template list is selected, this command opens the New table dialog for the creation of a new data template. The new data template is inserted below the selected node. If a row in the currently open data template is selected, this command inserts a new row below the selected row. |
| Save |  | Saves changes made to both the data template list and each data template. |
| Copy |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a node in the data template list is selected, this command copies the selected data template. If an item (or row) in the currently open data template is selected, this command copies the selected item. |
| Paste |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the root, or Empty, node is selected in the data template list, this command pastes a previously copied data template into the list. If an empty item (or row) in the currently open data template is selected, this command pastes a previously copied item into the data template item at the selected row. <p>NOTE: When adding a copied item, or row, to a data template, the paste command will overwrite item data in the selected row. To insert a copied row between existing rows, first use the New command to create an empty row, then paste the copied data into the new row.</p> |
| Delete |  | Deletes the selected data template from the list, or the selected item from the data template. |
| Change password |  | <p>Opens the Change password dialog, where you can change the Data Editor Write (<i>see page 321</i>) password.</p> <p>NOTE: The Data Editor Write password can also be changed in the Setup → Security web page.</p> |
| Read PLC symbols |  | Loads the existing Control Expert symbol, or variable, names into the Lookup Variable dialog. Variables that have been loaded into this dialog can be added to the currently open data template. |
| Start animation |  | <p>Starts the dynamic display of value and status for the items contained in the selected data template.</p> <p>NOTE: The Start animation icon is visible only when animation is turned OFF.</p> |
| Stop animation |  | <p>Stops the dynamic display of value and status for the items contained in the selected data template.</p> <p>NOTE: The Stop animation icon is visible only when animation is turned ON.</p> |

| Command or Field | Icon | Description |
|------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rate | — | The refresh rate of the dynamic display of data template items, in milliseconds. |
| IP address | — | The IP address of the Ethernet communication module and its embedded web server. |

Data Template List

The data template list displays a node for each data template that was either:

- previously saved, or
- created after the **Data Editor** was opened, but not yet saved

Select a data template in this list to view or edit its contents.

NOTE: If you create a new data template, then navigate away from the **Data Editor** before clicking the **Save** button, the new data template will be lost.

Data Template

Use the data template—when animation is turned ON—to monitor the status and values of items for the template that is currently selected in the data template list.

Each data template item (or row) is defined in the configuration area. A data template item can contain the following fields:

| Field | Description | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Symbol | Contains the names of Control Expert symbols (variables). | |
| Address | Contains direct addresses and the addresses of Control Expert symbols (variables). Any direct address can be viewed by entering its reference in this field. Valid direct addresses include: | |
| | %Mi | same as for 0X coils |
| | %Ii | same as 1x for discreet inputs |
| | %IWi | same as 3x for input registers |
| | %MWi, %MDi, %MFi | same as 4x for holding registers |
| NOTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A single bit of any word address (for example, %MWi, %IWi) can be specified by appending "j" to the address, where "j" is a bit index in the range of 0 (LSB) to 15 (MSB). For example, bit 4 of the value at %MW101 would be specified as %MW101.4. • A direct address can include an index specification that allows it to be treated as an array variable. Indexed addressing can be used with a %Mi, %MWi, %MDi, or %MFi address by appending "[j]" to the address of the beginning of the array, where "j" is an unsigned integer value. For example, the third value of an array of float values starting at %MF201 would be specified as %MF201[2]. | | |

| Field | Description | |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data type | Contains the data type of the symbol (variable) or direct address. Symbol (variable) data types appear automatically when the symbol (variable) is located. Select direct address data types from a drop-down list. The following data types are valid: | |
| | INT | 16-bit signed integer |
| | UINT | 16-bit unsigned integer |
| | DINT | 32-bit signed integer |
| | UDINT | 32-bit unsigned integer |
| | REAL | 32-bit IEEE floating point |
| | TIME | 32-bit unsigned integer (in ms) |
| | DATE | Date (32-bit BCD) |
| | TOD | Time of day (32-bit BCD) |
| BOOL | 1 bit discrete (Boolean) | |
| Value | When animation has started, this field displays the value of the symbol (variable) or direct address. This field is updated continuously. | |
| Format | Contains the format type for displaying the value of the symbol (variable) or direct address. The following formats are available: | |
| | bool | Boolean |
| | dec | Decimal |
| | hex | Hexadecimal |
| | binary | Binary |
| | ASCII | bytes displayed as ASCII characters |
| | time | day_hr_min_sec_ms |
| | date | YYYY-MM-DD or HH:MM:SS |
| Status | Contains messages describing the status of communication with the direct address: | |
| | if communication is normal | The status message reads OK |
| | if communication is interrupted | The status field displays a system message describing the interruption |

Configuration Area

Open and close the configuration area by double-clicking on a row in the data template. The configuration area will display the configuration settings for the selected row. Use the up and down arrows on your keyboard to move between rows in the data template and display their settings in the configuration area.

Use the configuration area—when data template animation is turned OFF—to:

- create a new data template (*see page 331*)
- display the items contained in an existing data template (*see page 333*)
- add a direct address (*see page 333*) to a data template

Use the configuration area—when data template animation is turned ON—to write data to read/write application variables.



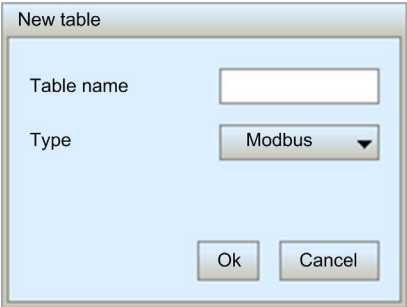
Refer to the topic *Working With Data Templates* for more information on how to use the controls in the configuration area.

Working With Data Templates

Creating a Data Template

To display and access application data, first create a data template.

To create a new data template, follow these steps:

| Step | Description |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Confirm that Data Editor animation is OFF. If necessary, click the Stop animation  toolbar button. |
| 2 | <p>Click the New table  toolbar button.</p> <p>The New table dialog opens:</p>  |
| 3 | In the Table name field, type in the name of the new data template. |
| 4 | <p>Click Ok.</p> <p>The new data template appears as a node in the data template list.</p> |

NOTE: Save the new data template before performing any other task in the **Data Editor**. Moving to another page—or creating a new data template in the current page—before saving your work deletes the new data template.


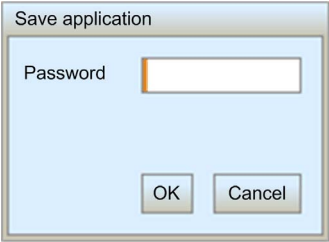
Saving a Data Template

After you save a new data template, you can re-use it to view or modify its contents.

NOTE:

- Be careful when you modify and save a data template. The last saved modification overwrites the pre-existing data template, even if the data template was originally created by someone other than yourself.
- If a data template is open for viewing by someone else, your edits to that data template will be seen only when that person next accesses the **Data Editor**.

To save a new data template, follow these steps:

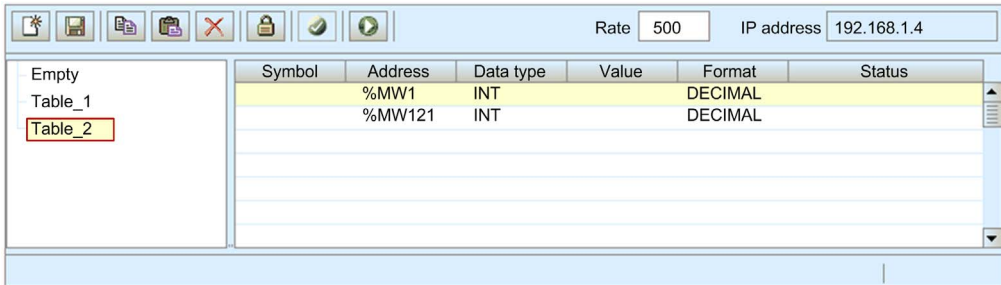
| Step | Description |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Click the Save  toolbar button. The Save application dialog opens:</p>  |
| 2 | <p>In the Password field, type in the Web Page (HTTP) Access password. NOTE: The default password is USER.</p> |
| 3 | <p>Click Ok. The new data template is saved.</p> |

Displaying an Existing Data Template

When you open a saved data template, you can use it to:

- edit its contents by inserting a direct address
- monitor the value and status of data items
- write data values to a read/write variables

The data template list, located on the left side of the **Data Editor**, displays the saved data templates. Select a data template node from the list to display that template's data items in the spreadsheet on the right:



Inserting a Direct Address Into a Data Template

You can add Control Expert direct address items—also called located registers—into a data template. After a direct address item is added, you can view or modify its value.

To add a direct address item to a data template, follow these steps:

| Step | Description |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the data template spreadsheet, double-click on an empty row. The Data Editor configuration area opens. |
| 2 | In the Address field of the configuration area, type in the item's direct address. |
| 3 | In the configuration area, click Apply . The selected row is updated. |
| 4 | Save your edits. |


Modifying Data Values Using a Data Template

You can use the **Data Editor** to write data values to a direct address item, and send the new value to the controller.

For example, suppose that you have programmed a pushbutton object to jog a motor when the button is depressed and to stop jogging when the button is released. If communications are lost while the button is depressed, the motor will continue to jog even when the button is released. Graphic objects are not designed to be used to control situations like this, unless other interlock methods are installed in the system.

NOTE: You can only modify the value of data items that are defined as read/write in the Control Expert application.

To use the **Data Editor** to edit data, follow these steps:

| Step | Description |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the data template spreadsheet, double-click on the item you want to write data to. The Data Editor configuration area opens, displaying the fields for the selected item. |
| 2 | In the Value field, type in the desired data value. |
| 3 | Click Apply . The Enter password dialog opens:  |
| 4 | In the Password field, type in the Write Data password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |
| 5 | Click OK . The new value is sent to the controller. |

Data Editor (Lite)

Overview

Data Editor Lite is a version of the **Data Editor** that is smaller in size and therefore faster to download, especially for use via a dial-up connection.

Data Editor Lite presents the same interface as the **Data Editor**, with the exception that its toolbar does not include the **Read PLC Symbols** function:

Variables

Data Editor Lite accepts the following IEC variables:

| Address | Type | Display |
|-----------------------|------|---------|
| %MW IEC internal word | INT | DECIMAL |
| %MD IEC double word | DINT | DECIMAL |
| %M IEC internal bits | BOOL | BOOLEAN |

NOTE: You cannot access the **Lookup Variable** dialog and insert symbols into a data template using **Data Editor Lite**. You can insert only direct addresses.

Re-Using Data Editor Templates

Data Editor Lite can reuse the same templates created with the **Data Editor**. However, **Data Editor** templates can use a wider range of variable types than **Data Editor Lite**. When **Data Editor Lite** encounters a variable it cannot manage, it displays `Not Supported` as the data type. In this case, the variable cannot be edited using **Data Editor Lite**.

Section 11.3

Diagnostics

Overview

This section describes the diagnostic services provided by the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module.

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|----------------------------|------|
| Using the Diagnostics Page | 337 |
| Status Summary | 338 |
| Rack Viewer | 340 |
| Processor Load | 341 |
| Scanner Status | 344 |
| Messaging | 346 |
| Ethernet Statistics | 348 |
| QoS Configuration | 350 |
| Properties | 351 |

Using the Diagnostics Page

Diagnostics Page

Click on the main menu **Diagnostics** command to display the **Diagnostics** page:



Schneider Electric 140 NOC 77101

Home Documentation URL

Monitoring Control Diagnostics Maintenance Setup

Diagnostics

Status Summary

Rack Viewer

Ethernet

Processor Load

Scanner Status

Messaging

Ethernet Statistics

QoS Configuration

Properties

Copyright © 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

To access a monitoring service, click on either of the following links:

- Status Summary (*see page 338*)
- Rack Viewer (*see page 340*)
- Ethernet:
 - Processor Load (*see page 341*)
 - Scanner Status (*see page 344*)
 - Messaging (*see page 346*)
 - Ethernet Statistics
 - QoS Configuration (*see page 350*)
- Properties (*see page 351*)

Status Summary

Introduction

Use the **Status Summary** page to view the status of:

- the LEDs (*see page 296*) located on the front of the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module
- the Ethernet services (*see page 67*) supported by the communication module
- the communication module in its role as:
 - scanner
 - Modbus TCP server
 - EtherNet/IP messaging server

Status Summary Display

The **Status Summary** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows the 'STATUS SUMMARY' page with a navigation bar at the top containing 'Monitoring', 'Control', 'Diagnostics', 'Maintenance', and 'Setup'. The 'Diagnostics' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, the page is divided into two main sections: 'LEDs' and 'Services'.

LEDs Section:

| Label | Status |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| Active | Running |
| Module Status | In Operation |
| Network Status | In operation |
| Ready | In Operation |
| Link | Ethernet link established |
| 100MB | Connected to 100MB network |
| Fduplex | Connected to Full duplex network |

Services Section:

| Function | Status |
|----------------|------------------|
| DHCP Server | Enabled |
| FDR Server | Enabled |
| QoS Tagging | Enabled |
| Access Control | Enabled |
| Scanner Status | Working properly |

Copyright © 2000-2009, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Ethernet → Status Summary . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |

Status Summary Data

The **LEDs** section of the page can present the following operational states:

| LED | Color | Text Descriptions |
|----------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------|
| Active | Green | Running |
| | Red | Error present |
| Module Status) | Green | In operation |
| | Red | Not configured |
| | | Fault detected |
| Recoverable fault detected | | |
| Network Status) | Green | Connections established |
| | Red | Connection error |
| | | Duplicate IP address |
| Ready | Green | In operation |
| | Red | Duplicate IP address |
| | | Waiting for Served IP Configuration |
| | | Default IP in use |
| Configuration error | | |
| Link | Green | Ethernet link established |
| | Red | No Ethernet link established |
| 100MB | Green | Connected to 100MB network |
| | Gray | Not connected to 100MB network |
| Fduplex | Green | Connected to Full duplex network |
| | Gray | Not connected to Full duplex network |

The **Services** section of the page can present the following functional conditions:

| Function | Color | Text Descriptions |
|----------------|-------|--------------------------------|
| DHCP Server | — | Enabled |
| FDR Server | | Disabled |
| QoS Tagging | | |
| Access Control | | |
| Scanner Status | Green | Working properly |
| | Red | At least one connection is bad |
| | Gray | Not configured |

Rack Viewer

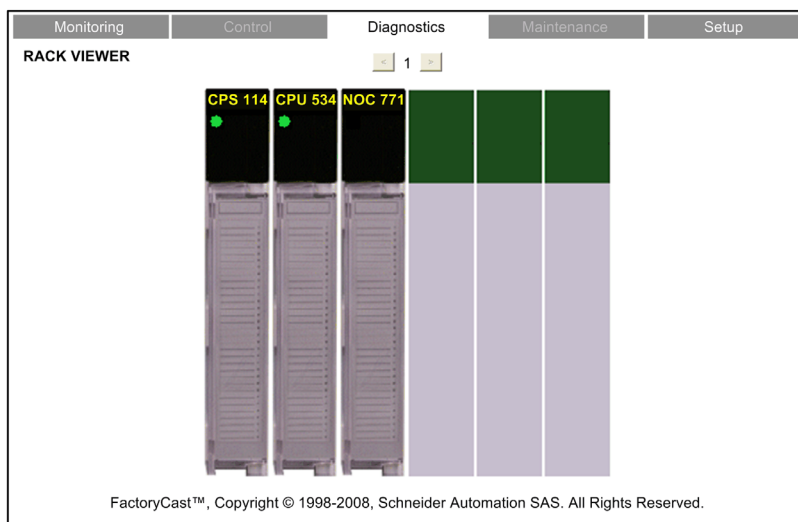
Introduction

Use the **Rack Viewer** to access web pages that describe the identity, placement, configuration and operation of modules in the Quantum rack.

To view information describing a specific module—including the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module—click on the image of that module in the **Rack Viewer**.

Rack Display

The **Rack Viewer** looks like this, when it is first opened:



To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Rack Viewer . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |
| 4 | To open a page displaying configuration and operating data for the 140 NOC 771 01, click on the module image in the rack. The Rack Viewer parameter page opens. |
| 5 | To return to the main Rack Viewer page, click the Back arrow. |

Processor Load

Introduction

Use the **Processor Load** web page to display dynamically generated data for the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module's bandwidth usage.

Processor Load Display

The **Processor Load** page looks like this:

| Monitoring | Control | Diagnostics | Maintenance | Setup | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------|--|
| PROCESSOR LOAD | | | | | |
| Processor Load | | | | | |
| Module Load | | | | | |
| Processor Utilization | | 38 | % | | |
| Communication Load | | | | | |
| Function | Statistics | | Units | | |
| I/O | Scanner | EtherNet/IP Sent (writes) | 31 | Packets per second | |
| | | EtherNet/IP Received (read) | 33 | Packets per second | |
| | | Modbus TCP Requests | 17 | Packets per second | |
| | | Modbus TCP Responses | 16 | Packets per second | |
| | Adapter | EtherNet/IP Sent (writes) | 0 | Packets per second | |
| | | EtherNet/IP Received (read) | 0 | Packets per second | |
| | Module Capacity | | 12000 | Packets per second | |
| | Module Utilization | | 0.8 | % | |
| Messaging | Client | EtherNet/IP activity | 0 | Messages per second | |
| | | Modbus TCP activity | 0 | Messages per second | |
| | Server | EtherNet/IP activity | 0 | Messages per second | |
| | | Modbus TCP activity | 0 | Messages per second | |
| Copyright © 2000-2009, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved. | | | | | |

NOTE: The background color for the **Processor Utilization** and **Module Utilization** values varies, depending upon the percentage of utilization. If utilization is:

- 90% to 100%—background color is RED
- 80% to 89.99%—background color is YELLOW
- 0% to 79.99%—background color is GRAY

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Ethernet → Processor Load . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |

Processor Load Parameters

The **Processor Load** page displays the following parameters for the communication module:

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Module Load: | |
| Processor Utilization | The percent of Ethernet communication module processor capacity used by the present level of communication activity. The background color of the value changes, depending on the percentage utilization. |
| I/O Scanner: | |
| EtherNet/IP Sent (writes) | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| EtherNet/IP Received (read) | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| Modbus TCP Requests | The number of Modbus TCP requests the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| Modbus TCP Responses | The number of Modbus TCP responses the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| I/O Adapter: | |
| EtherNet/IP Sent (writes) | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| EtherNet/IP Received (read) | The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second. |
| I/O - Module | |
| Module Capacity | The maximum number of packets that the module can process, in packets per second. |
| Module Utilization | The percentage of communication module capacity being used by the application. The background color of the value changes, depending on the percentage utilization. |

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Messaging - Client: | |
| EtherNet/IP activity | The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |
| Modbus TCP activity | The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |
| Messaging - Server: | |
| EtherNet/IP activity | The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |
| Modbus TCP activity | The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second. |

Scanner Status

Introduction

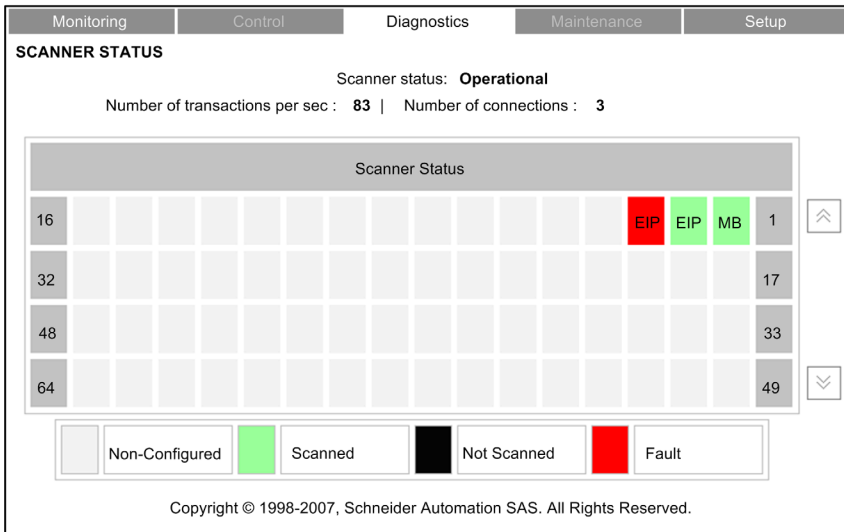
The **Scanner Status** web page displays read-only data describing the current state of the 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module in its role as I/O scanner.

Scanner Status Display

The top of the page displays the following general diagnostic information about the scanner:

- I/O scanning status
 - A value of **Operational** indicates that the values in the **Scanner Status** grid are reporting the state of scanned devices.
 - A value of **Stopped** indicates the local system is not scanning. In this case, any data that appears in the **Scanner Status** grid is meaningless.
- Number of transactions per second
- Number of connections

The **Scanner Status** web page looks like this:



Monitoring Control Diagnostics Maintenance Setup

SCANNER STATUS

Scanner status: **Operational**

Number of transactions per sec : **83** | Number of connections : **3**

| Scanner Status | | | |
|----------------|--|-----|----|
| 16 | | EIP | 1 |
| 32 | | | 17 |
| 48 | | | 33 |
| 64 | | | 49 |

Non-Configured
Scanned
Not Scanned
Fault

Copyright © 1998-2007, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

In the **Scanner Status** grid, the colors that appear in each block indicate the following states for specific remote devices:

- GREEN indicates that a device is being scanned
- BLACK indicates that I/O scanning of the specific device has been intentionally disabled
- GRAY indicates an device that is not configured
- RED indicates a suspect device

NOTE: A green **Scanner Status** indicator in the grid can remain green for a remote scanned device after the Ethernet cable is detached from that device. This situation can occur if the health timeout value for that device is set to 0.

To avoid this result—and to help promote the accurate reporting of I/O scanning health—configure an operational health timeout value in the range 1...65535 (in 1 ms increments).

The grid also indicates the protocol used to communicate with the remote device:

- MB: indicates a Modbus TCP connection
- EIP: indicates an EtherNet/IP connection

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Ethernet → Scanner Status . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Ethernet → Messaging . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |

Ethernet Statistics

Introduction

The **Ethernet Statistics** page provides information about the status, transmit and receive statistics, and detected errors for the web server embedded in the 140 NOC 771 01 communication module.

Ethernet Statistics Display

The **Ethernet Statistics** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a web interface with a navigation bar at the top containing 'Monitoring', 'Control', 'Diagnostics', 'Maintenance', and 'Setup'. The main content area is titled 'PORT STATISTICS' and is divided into two sections:

- Ethernet configuration:** A form with fields for Host Name (----), Subnet Mask (255.255.255.0), MAC Address (00 80 f4 01 fd ff), Gateway Address (0.0.0.0), and IP Address (192.168.1.4).
- Port Statistics:** A table for 'port 1' showing various metrics:

| Metric | Value |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| Interface label | Port 1 |
| Speed (Operational) | 100 Mbps |
| Duplex (Operational) | TP-Full Link |
| Frames transmit OK | 5547 |
| Frames received OK | 354354 |
| Collisions | 0 |
| Excessive collisions | 0 |
| Late collisions | 0 |
| CRC errors | 0 |
| Number Bytes Received | 36473549 |
| Number Inbound Packets Error | 0 |
| Number Inbound Packets Discard | 0 |
| Number Bytes Sent | 2353676 |
| Number Outbound Packets Error | 0 |
| Number Outbound Packets Discard | 0 |

At the bottom of the statistics section is a 'Reset counters' button. The footer of the page reads: 'Copyright © 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.'

Click the **Reset counters** button to reset the counting statistics to zero.

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Ethernet → Ethernet Statistics . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |

Ethernet Statistics

The **Ethernet Statistics** page displays the following data for the Ethernet communication module.

Ethernet configuration data:

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hostname | The name assigned to the communication module |
| MAC Address | The factory assigned Media Access Control (MAC) address, consisting of 6 hexadecimal octet values |
| IP Address | The Internet Protocol (IP) address (<i>see page 62</i>) that has been assigned to the communication module |
| Subnet Mask | The subnet mask (<i>see page 62</i>) that has been assigned to the communication module |
| Gateway Address | The IP address of the remote device (<i>see page 62</i>), if any, that serves as a gateway to the communication module |

Port Statistics:

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Speed (Operational) | Baud rate: 0, 10 or 100 Mbits/second |
| Duplex (Operational) | Twisted Pair—Full Link, or Twisted Pair—Half Link |
| Frames transmit OK | The number of frames that have been successfully transmitted |
| Frames received OK | The number of frames that have been successfully received |
| Collisions | The number of times a collision between two successfully transmitted packets was detected on the link |
| Excessive collisions | The number of times the transmitter has not succeeded after 16 attempts to transmit a frame, due to repeated collisions |
| Late collisions | The number of times a collision was detected after the slot time of the channel had elapsed |
| CRC errors | The number of times a CRC (FCS) error was detected on an incoming frame |
| Number Bytes Received | The number of inbound bytes received on the interface |
| Number Inbound Packets Error | The number of inbound packets that contain detected errors (not included in discards) |
| Number Inbound Packets Discard | The number of inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded |
| Number Bytes Sent | The number of outbound bytes transmitted on the interface |
| Number Outbound Packets Error | The number of outbound packets that contain detected errors (not included in discards) |
| Number Outbound Packets Discard | The number of outbound packets discarded while attempting to send them |

QoS Configuration

Introduction

The 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module supports the OSI layer 3 Quality of Service (QoS) standard defined in RFC-2475. When the QoS is enabled, the module adds a *differentiated services code point* (DSCP) tag to each Ethernet packet it transmits, thereby indicating the priority of that packet.

The **QoS Configuration** page displays both the:

- status of the QoS Ethernet packet tagging service—enabled or disabled, and
- the QoS service configuration settings

NOTE: The QoS service is enabled in the Services page (*see page 67*), and the configuration settings are input in the QoS page (*see page 80*), of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool.

QoS Configuration Display

The QoS Configuration page looks like this:

| Monitoring | Control | Diagnostics | Maintenance | Setup |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| QoS CONFIGURATION | | | | |
| QoS Configuration | | | | |
| | | | | Status: <input type="text" value="Enabled"/> |
| DSCP Value for IO Data Urgent Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP): | | | | <input type="text" value="55"/> |
| DSCP Value for IO Data Scheduled Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP): | | | | <input type="text" value="47"/> |
| DSCP Value for IO Data High Priority Messages (Modbus TCP - EtherNet/IP): | | | | <input type="text" value="43"/> |
| DSCP Value for IO Data Low Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP): | | | | <input type="text" value="31"/> |
| DSCP Value for Explicit Message (Modbus TCP - EtherNet/IP): | | | | <input type="text" value="27"/> |
| Copyright © 2000-2009, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved. | | | | |

This page is read-only.

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Ethernet → QoS Configuration . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |

Properties

Introduction

The **Properties** web page displays read-only data describing the particular 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module installed in your system.

Properties Display

The **Properties** page looks like this:

| Monitoring | Control | Diagnostics | Maintenance | Setup |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------|-------------|-------|
| PROPERTIES | | | | |
| Properties | | | | |
| Device type: 12 | | | | |
| Product code: 1026 | | | | |
| Product name: 140 NOC 771 01 | | | | |
| Revision: 1.01 | | | | |
| Serial number: 134347959 | | | | |
| Status: 100 | | | | |
| Vendor name: 243 | | | | |
| Copyright © 2000-2009, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved. | | | | |

To open this page:

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Starting at the Home page , click the Diagnostics main menu item. The Diagnostics page opens. |
| 2 | On the left side of the Diagnostics page, select Properties . |
| 3 | If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. NOTE: The default password is USER . |

Appendices



What Is in This Appendix?

The appendix contains the following chapters:

| Chapter | Chapter Name | Page |
|---------|--------------------------|------|
| A | Detected Error Codes | 355 |
| B | CIP General Status Codes | 361 |

Appendix A

Detected Error Codes

Overview

This chapter contains a list of codes that describe the status of Ethernet communication module messages.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

| Topic | Page |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| TCP/IP Ethernet Detected Error Codes | 356 |
| Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes | 357 |
| EtherNet/IP Implicit or Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes | 358 |

TCP/IP Ethernet Detected Error Codes

TCP/IP Ethernet Detected Error Codes

An event in an MBP_MSTR routine via TCP/IP Ethernet may produce one of the following codes in the MBP_MSTR control block.

TCP/IP Ethernet Hexadecimal Detected Error Codes

TCP/IP Ethernet hexadecimal detected error codes include:

| Code (hexadecimal) | Meaning |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 16#1001 | Abort by user |
| 16#2001 | An operation type that is not supported has been specified in the control block |
| 16#2002 | One or more control block parameters were modified while the MSTR element was active (this only applies to operations which require several cycles for completion). Control block parameters may only be modified in inactive MSTR components. |
| 16#2003 | Invalid value in the length field of the control block |
| 16#2004 | Invalid value in the offset field of the control block |
| 16#2005 | Invalid value in the length and offset fields of the control block |
| 16#2006 | Unauthorized data field on slave |
| 16#2007 | Invalid slot number in the configuration routing register Example: 253 for 140 CRP 312 00 slot number |
| 16#2008 | Unauthorized network routing path on slave |
| 16#200E | The control block is not assigned, or parts of the control block are located outside of the %MW (4x) range. |
| 16#200F | The space allocated for the CIP response is too small. |
| 16#3000 | Generic Modbus exception response |
| 16#3001 | Slave does not support requested operation |
| 16#3002 | Non-existing slave registers were requested |
| 16#3003 | An unauthorized data value was requested |
| 16#3005 | Slave has accepted a lengthy program command |
| 16#3006 | Function cannot currently be carried out: lengthy command running |
| 16#3007 | Slave has rejected lengthy program command |
| 16#4001 | Inconsistent response by Modbus slave |
| 16#F001 | Module is resetting |
| 16#F002 | Component not fully initialized |

Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes

Modbus TCP Detected Error Codes

An event in an `MBP_MSTR` routine via Modbus TCP may produce one of the following detected error codes in the `MBP_MSTR` control block.

Modbus TCP Hexadecimal Detected Error Codes

Modbus TCP hexadecimal detected error codes include:

| Code (hexadecimal) | Meaning |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 16#5101 | No resources |
| 16#5102 | Bad IP address |
| 16#5103 | Transaction timed out |
| 16#5104 | Concurrent connections or transactions limit reached |
| 16#5105 | Remote address not allowed |
| 16#5106 | No route to host |
| 16#5107 | Remote host is down |
| 16#5108 | Connection reset by peer |
| 16#5109 | Network is down |
| 16#5301 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No resources available <li style="text-align: center;">— or — ● Module not ready or initializing |
| 16#510A | Connection refused |
| 16#510B | Connection timed out |

EtherNet/IP Implicit or Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes

Introduction

If an MBP_MSTR function block does not execute an EtherNet/IP explicit message, Control Expert displays a hexadecimal detected error code. This code can describe:

- an EtherNet/IP event
- a TCP/IP Ethernet event

Refer to the topic TCP/IP Ethernet detected error codes (*see page 356*) for a description of those codes.

EtherNet/IP Detected Error Codes

EtherNet/IP hexadecimal detected error codes include:

| Code | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 16#800D | Timeout on the explicit message request |
| 16#8015 | Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nor resources to handle the message, or • Internal event: no buffer available, no link available, impossible to send to the TCP task |
| 16#8018 | Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Another explicit message for this device is in progress, or • TCP connection or encapsulation session in progress |
| 16#8030 | Timeout on the Forward_Open request |
| Note: The following 16#81xx events are Forward_Open response detected error codes that originate at the remote target and are received via the CIP connection. | |
| 16#8100 | Connection in use or duplicate Forward_Open |
| 16#8103 | Transport class and trigger combination not supported |
| 16#8106 | Ownership conflict |
| 16#8107 | Target connection not found |
| 16#8108 | Invalid network connection parameter |
| 16#8109 | Invalid connection size |
| 16#8110 | Target for connection not configured |
| 16#8111 | RPI not supported |
| 16#8113 | Out of connections |
| 16#8114 | Vendor ID or product code mismatch |
| 16#8115 | Product type mismatch |
| 16#8116 | Revision mismatch |
| 16#8117 | Invalid produced or consumed application path |

| Code | Description |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 16#8118 | Invalid or inconsistent configuration application path |
| 16#8119 | Non-Listen Only connection not opened |
| 16#811A | Target object out of connections |
| 16#811B | RPI is smaller than the production inhibit time |
| 16#8123 | Connection timed out |
| 16#8124 | Unconnected request timed out |
| 16#8125 | Parameter event in unconnected request and service |
| 16#8126 | Message too large for unconnected_send service |
| 16#8127 | Unconnected acknowledge without reply |
| 16#8131 | No buffer memory available |
| 16#8132 | Network bandwidth not available for data |
| 16#8133 | No consumed connection ID filter available |
| 16#8134 | Not configured to send scheduled priority data |
| 16#8135 | Schedule signature mismatch |
| 16#8136 | Schedule signature validation not possible |
| 16#8141 | Port not available |
| 16#8142 | Link address not valid |
| 16#8145 | Invalid segment in connection path |
| 16#8146 | Event in Forward_Close service connection path |
| 16#8147 | Scheduling not specified |
| 16#8148 | Link address to self invalid |
| 16#8149 | Secondary resources unavailable |
| 16#814A | Rack connection already established |
| 16#814B | Module connection already established |
| 16#814C | Miscellaneous |
| 16#814D | Redundant connection mismatch |
| 16#814E | No more user-configurable link consumer resources: the configured number of resources for a producing application has reached the limit |
| 16#814F | No more user-configurable link consumer resources: there are no consumers configured for a producing application to use |
| 16#8160 | Vendor specific |
| 16#8170 | No target application data available |
| 16#8171 | No originator application data available |
| 16#8173 | Not configured for off-subnet multicast |
| 16#81A0 | Event in data assignment |

| Code | Description |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 16#81B0 | Optional object state event |
| 16#81C0 | Optional device state event |
| Note: All 16#82xx events are register session response detected error codes. | |
| 16#8200 | Target device does not have sufficient resources |
| 16#8208 | Target device does not recognize message encapsulation header |
| 16#820F | Reserved or unknown event from target |

Appendix B

CIP General Status Codes

CIP General Status Codes

NOTE: Taken by permission from *The CIP Networks Library, Volume 1, Common Industrial Protocol (CIP™)*, Edition 3.6, April 2009.

The following table lists the status codes that may be present in the general status code field of a detected error response message. Note that the extended code field is available for use in further describing any general status code. Extended status codes are unique to each general status code within each object. Each object manages the extended status values and value ranges (including vendor specific). All extended status values are reserved unless otherwise indicated within the object definition.

| General Status Code (in hex) | Status Name | Description of Status |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00 | Success | Service was successfully performed by the object specified. |
| 01 | Connection unsuccessful | A connection related service was unsuccessful along the connection path. |
| 02 | Resource unavailable | Resources needed for the object to perform the requested service were unavailable. |
| 03 | Invalid parameter value | See status code 0x20, which is the preferred value to use for this condition. |
| 04 | Path segment error | The path segment identifier or the segment syntax was not understood by the processing node. Path processing stops when a path segment error is detected. |
| 05 | Path destination unknown | The path is referencing an object class, instance, or structure element that is not known or is not contained in the processing node. Path processing stops when a path destination unknown error is detected. |
| 06 | Partial transfer | Only part of the expected data was transferred. |
| 07 | Connection lost | The messaging connection was lost. |
| 08 | Service not supported | The requested service was not implemented or was not defined for this object class/instance. |
| 09 | Invalid attribute value | Invalid attribute data detected. |
| 0A | Attribute list error | An attribute in the Get_Attribute_List or Set_Attribute_List response has a non-zero status. |

| General Status Code (in hex) | Status Name | Description of Status |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0B | Already in requested mode/state | The object is already in the mode/state being requested by the service. |
| 0C | Object state conflict | The object cannot perform the requested service in its current mode/state. |
| 0D | Object already exists | The requested instance of object to be created already exists. |
| 0E | Attribute not settable | A request to modify a non-modifiable attribute was received. |
| 0F | Privilege violation | A permission/privilege check was unsuccessful. |
| 10 | Device state conflict | The device's current mode/state prohibits the execution of the requested service. |
| 11 | Reply data too large | The data to be transmitted in the response buffer is larger than the allocated response buffer. |
| 12 | Fragmentation of a primitive value | The service specified an operation that is going to fragment a primitive data value, i.e., half a REAL data type. |
| 13 | Not enough data | The service did not supply enough data to perform the specified operation. |
| 14 | Attribute not supported | The attribute specified in the request is not supported. |
| 15 | Too much data | The service supplied more data than was expected. |
| 16 | Object does not exist | The object specified does not exist in the device. |
| 17 | Service fragmentation sequence not in progress | The fragmentation sequence for this service is not currently active for this data. |
| 18 | No stored attribute data | The attribute data of this object was not saved prior to the requested service. |
| 19 | Store operation unsuccessful | The attribute data of this object was not saved due to an unsuccessful attempt. |
| 1A | Routing unsuccessful, request packet too large | The service request package was too large for transmission on a network in the path to the destination. The routing device was forced to abort the service. |
| 1B | Routing unsuccessful, response packet too large | The service response packet was too large for transmission on a network in the path from the destination. The routing device was forced to abort the service. |
| 1C | Missing attribute list entry data | The service did not supply an attribute in a list of attributes that was needed by the service to perform the requested behavior. |
| 1D | Invalid attribute value list | The service is returning the list of attributes supplied with status information for those attributes that were invalid. |
| 1E | Embedded service error | An embedded service resulted in a detected error. |

| General Status Code (in hex) | Status Name | Description of Status |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1F | Vendor specific error | A vendor specific error has been detected. The additional code field of the error response defines the particular error encountered. Use this general code only when none of the codes presented in this table or within an object class definition accurately reflect the detected error. |
| 20 | Invalid parameter | A parameter associated with the request was invalid. This code is used when a parameter does not meet the requirements of this specification and/or the requirements defined in an application object specification. |
| 21 | Write-once value or medium already written | An attempt was made to write to a write-once medium (e.g., WORM drive, PROM) that has already been written, or to modify a value that cannot be changed once established. |
| 22 | Invalid reply received | An invalid reply is received (e.g., reply service code does not match the request service code, or reply message is shorter than the minimum expected reply size). This status code can serve for other causes of invalid replies. |
| 23 | Buffer overflow | The message received is larger than the receiving buffer can handle. The entire message was discarded. |
| 24 | Message format error | The format of the received message is not supported by the server. |
| 25 | Key failure in path | The key segment that was included as the first segment in the path does not match the destination module. The object specific status indicates which part of the key check was unsuccessful. |
| 26 | Path size invalid | The size of the path that was sent with the service request is either not large enough to allow the request to be routed to an object or too much routing data was included. |
| 27 | Unexpected attribute in list | An attempt was made to set an attribute that is not able to be set at this time. |
| 28 | Invalid member ID | The member ID specified in the request does not exist in the specified class/instance/attribute. |
| 29 | Member not settable | A request to modify a non-modifiable member was received. |
| 2A | Group 2 only server — general error | This detected error code may only be reported by DeviceNet group 2 only servers with 4 Kb or less code space and only in place of service not supported, attribute not support, or attribute not settable. |
| 2B | Unknown Modbus error | A CIP to Modbus translator received an unknown Modbus exception code. |
| 2C | Attribute not gettable | A request to read a non-readable attribute was received. |

| General Status Code (in hex) | Status Name | Description of Status |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2D - CF | – | Reserved by CIP for future extensions. |
| D0 - FF | Reserved for object class and service errors | This range of detected error codes is used to indicate object class specific detected errors. Use this range only when none of the codes presented in this table accurately reflect the error that is detected. |



R

RPI

(requested packet interval) The time period between cyclic data transmissions requested by the Scanner. EtherNet/IP devices will publish data at the rate specified by the RPI assigned to them by the Scanner. Modbus TCP devices will receive message requests from the Scanner at each RPI.



0-9

- 140 NOC 780 00
 - device editor, *54*
 - DTM browser, *42*

A

- access control, *77*
- add remote device, *110, 143*
- address
 - I/O, *170*
- advanced mode
 - DTM browser, *47*
- Advantys STB island
 - connecting to, *123, 152*
- assembly object, *215, 220*
- auto-negotiation, *184*

B

- Bandwidth Diagnostics, *304*

C

- channel properties, *59*
- CIP objects, *211*
- clear local statistics, *286*
- clear remote statistics, *287*
- configuration
 - inputs, outputs, *36*
- configuring
 - properties in device editor, *54*
- connection
 - diagnostics, *307*
 - I/O, *311*
 - overhead, *196*
 - protocol, *196*
 - type, *196*
- connection manager object, *217*

- connection timeout
 - calculating, *195*
- control bits, *172*
- Control Expert
 - download application, *56*
 - upload application, *57*

D

- data editor
 - creating a data template, *331*
 - direct address, *333*
 - lite, *335*
 - modify data, *334*
 - saving a data template, *332*
- data editor (standard), *326*
- data template
 - displaying a data template, *333*
- derived data types, *166, 168*
- derived variables, *169*
- detected error codes
 - EtherNet/IP, *358*
 - explicit messaging, *358*
 - MBP_MSTR, *358*
 - Modbus TCP, *357*
 - TCP/IP, *356*
- device bandwidth, *203*
- device discovery, *48*
- device editor, *52*
 - DTM browser, *54*
- device load, *203*
- DHCP, *69*
- DHCP client, *71*

diagnostics, *299*
bandwidth, *304, 341*
connection, *307*
Ethernet port, *301*
Ethernet statistics, *348*
local slave, *307*
messaging, *346*
processor load, *341*
properties, *351*
QoS, *350*
rack viewer, *340*
scanner status, *344*
status summary, *338*

diagnostics web page, *337*

download, *56*

DTM

add, *99*

DTM Browser, *39*

DTM browser

advanced mode, *47*

configuring properties in device editor, *54*

DTM browser menu commands, *42*

E

EDS file

add, *100*

remove, *105*

Ethernet

connection speed, *61*

frame format, *61*

Ethernet diagnostics, *301*

Ethernet link object, *226*

Ethernet statistics, *348*

EtherNet/IP detected error codes, *358*

EtherNet/IP explicit connection diagnostics object, *240, 242*

EtherNet/IP interface diagnostics object, *231*

EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object, *234*

EtherNet/IP settings, *64*

explicit message, *193*

EtherNet/IP, *290*

Modbus TCP, *293*

explicit messaging

EtherNet/IP, *261*

EtherNet/IP services, *259*

Get_Attributes_Single, *264*

MBP_MSTR, *256*

Modbus TCP, *282*

Modbus TCP function codes, *281*

Read Modbus Object, *269*

Write Modbus Object, *274*

explicit messaging detected error codes, *358*

F

FDR, *69*

field bus discovery, *48*

full-duplex, *184*

G

get local statistics, *284*

get remote statistics, *286*

H

hardware catalog

updating, *103*

health bits, *171*

home web page, *320*

I

I/O

connection, *311*

local slave, *311*

identity object, *213*

IGMP snooping, *186*

implicit message, *194*

inputs

address, *170*

size, location, *36*

IO connection diagnostics object, *236*

IP address, *62*

L

LED indicators, *296*

load

 example, *206*

 limits, *199*

local slave, *83*

 configuring, *85*

 diagnostics, *307*

 I/O, *90, 311*

logging, *313*

M

MBP_MSTR, *256, 261, 264, 269, 274, 282*

MBP_MSTR detected error codes, *358*

menu commands

 DTM browser, *42*

message

 priority, *198*

message bandwidth, *202*

message frequency, *200*

message load, *202*

message response time, *205*

message traverse time, *204*

messages

 types, *193*

messaging, *346*

Modbus TCP detected error codes, *357*

monitoring web page, *325*

N

network

 example, *28*

network bandwidth, *203*

network example, *108, 141*

network load, *203*

O

online action

 CIP object, *246*

 display CIP object data, *247*

 get port configuration, *249*

 ping, *250*

 port configuration, *248*

 reset, *247*

 set port configuration, *249*

online parameters, *252*

outputs

 address, *170*

 size, location, *36*

P

password

 data editor write, *322*

 web page access, *322*

 web pages, *321*

ping, *250*

port diagnostics, *301*

port mirroring, *190*

processor load, *341*

Q

QoS, *80, 185, 198, 350*

QoS object, *222*

R

rack viewer, *340*

read data, *283*

read/write data, *288*

remote device

 configuring, *112, 145*

replacement, *315*

reset module, *287*

RSTP, *187*

S

scanner status, *344*

services

- enabling, *67*
- SNMP agent, *74, 191*
- specifications, *19*
 - communication, *21*
- status summary, *338*
- STB NIC 2212
 - configuring I/O items, *127*
- STB NIP 2212
 - configuring I/O items, *156*
- switch
 - managed, *183*
 - recommended features, *183*

T

- TCP/IP detected error codes, *356*
- TCP/IP interface object, *224*
- timeout
 - connection, *195*

U

- uninstall, *25*
- upload, *57*
- username, *322*

V

- variables
 - derived, *169*
- VLAN, *188*

W

web pages

- data editor (standard), *326*
- diagnostics, *337*
- Ethernet statistics, *348*
- home, *320*
- messaging, *346*
- monitoring, *325*
- password, *321*
- processor load, *341*
- properties, *351*
- QoS, *350*
- rack viewer, *340*
- scanner status, *344*
- status summary, *338*
- write data, *283*